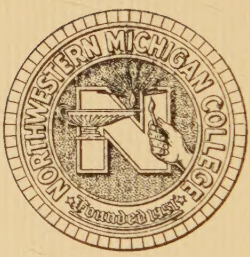
KING HENRY THE FIFTH

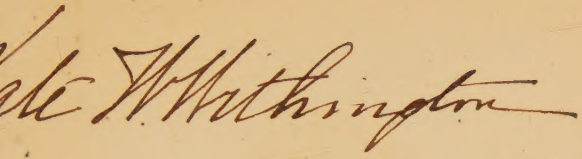
EDITED BY W. J. ROLFE



Presented

IN MEMORY OF

KATH WIT



NORTHWESTERN MICHIGAN COLLEGE
WITHDRAWN

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2026

https://archive.org/details/historyofkinghen0000will_i4h7

Kungsleung
V.

SHAKESPEARE'S

HISTORY OF

KING HENRY THE FIFTH

EDITED, WITH NOTES,

BY

WILLIAM J. ROLFE, LITT.D.,
FORMERLY HEAD MASTER OF THE HIGH SCHOOL,
CAMBRIDGE, MASS.

ILLUSTRATED

NEW YORK ·:· CINCINNATI ·:· CHICAGO
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

822.33
A11 R
V.10

COPYRIGHT, 1904, BY
WILLIAM J. ROLFE.

HENRY V.

W. P. I

8199

PREFACE

My former edition of *King Henry V*, first published in 1877, is now substantially remade on the same general plan as the revised *Merchant of Venice* and other plays that have preceded it.

The notes on *textual variations* have been either omitted or abridged, as the text of the play is now virtually settled.

For most of the "Critical Comments" in the former edition I have substituted matter of my own, much of which is drawn from familiar lectures prepared for audiences of teachers and students.

Minor changes have been made throughout the Notes, and many new ones have been added, including a considerable number in place of those referring to my former editions of other plays. The book is now absolutely complete in itself.

I believe that teachers will prefer the new edition to the old one; but both can be used, without serious inconvenience, in the same class or club.

CONTENTS

PAGE

INTRODUCTION TO KING HENRY THE FIFTH 9

The History of the Play 9

The Historical Sources of the Plot 10

General Comments on the Play 11

KING HENRY THE FIFTH 23

Act I 25

Act II 43

Act III 66

Act IV 95

Act V 136

NOTES 157

APPENDIX:

The Time-analysis of the Play 253

List of Characters in the Play 254

INDEX OF WORDS AND PHRASES EXPLAINED . . . 257

HENRY V. AND COURTIERS

[*From Ancient MS.*]

THE GLOBE THEATRE

INTRODUCTION TO KING HENRY THE FIFTH

THE HISTORY OF THE PLAY

Henry V., in the form in which we now have it, was first published in the folio of 1623, but a mutilated and incomplete quarto edition, probably compiled from shorthand notes taken at the theatre, was issued in 1600 and reprinted in 1602.

The date of the play is fixed by a passage in the chorus of the last act: —

> "Were now the general of our gracious empress —
> As in good time he may — from Ireland coming," etc.

This evidently refers to Lord Essex, who went to Ireland, April 15, 1599, and returned to London,

September 28 of the same year. Unless the passage was a later insertion, which is not probable, the play must have been written between those dates. It is not mentioned by Meres in 1598 in his list of Shakespeare's plays, which includes *Henry IV.*

Henry V. was Shakespeare's ideal king, and his history as prince and as sovereign runs through three plays — 1 and 2 *Henry IV.* and *Henry V.* The two former are really but one play, divided for the stage on account of its length; and the latter continues the history of Prince Hal, who has been a prominent actor in the earlier parts of the trilogy. Similarly, the history of Henry IV. had begun in the play of *Richard II.*, where Bolingbroke is perhaps a more important personage than the weak monarch whose title he usurps, and who gives his name to the drama. That play prepares us for the right understanding of the King in *Henry IV.*; and the development of the Prince, his son, in the latter, leads up to his presentation as sovereign in *Henry V.* The four plays should be read as a connected composition if we would fully appreciate the poet's plan and aim.

The Historical Sources of the Plot

Shakespeare took the leading incidents of his *Henry IV.* and *Henry V.* from an anonymous play entitled *The Famous Victories of Henry the Fifth* which was written at least as early as 1588, and had a popularity far beyond its merits; but he drew his historical

materials mainly from Holinshed's *Chronicles of Englande, Scotlande, and Ireland*, as the illustrative extracts from that author in the notes will show. As in the case of *Richard II.*, he doubtless used the second edition of Holinshed, published in 1586–87.

General Comments on the Play[1]

The delineation of the Prince in *Henry IV.*, which at first glance seems inconsistent with that of the King in *Henry V.*, is in reality thoroughly in keeping therewith. At first we are inclined to say, with the Archbishop in the opening scene (lines 24–37) of *Henry V.*: "The courses of his youth promis'd it not," etc. But Shakespeare is careful that this remarkable change shall not appear like the sudden reform of the villain in the average modern melodrama. In the very first scene in which the Prince appears, the poet takes pains to show us his real character. He is introduced in the company of his wild friends, and joins them in planning the Gadshill robbery; but when they leave him the poet detains him on the stage for a soliloquy in which the true prince utters himself (1 *Henry IV.* i. 2. 219 fol.):—

> "I know you all, and will awhile uphold
> The unyok'd humour of your idleness;

[1] It is proper to state that some portions of these comments were originally contributed without my name to an edition of Shakespeare published in England about fifteen years ago.

Yet herein will I imitate the sun,
Who doth permit the base contagious clouds
To smother up his beauty from the world,
That, when he please again to be himself,
Being wanted, he may be more wonder'd at,
By breaking through the foul and ugly mists
Of vapours that did seem to strangle him.
If all the year were playing holidays,
To sport would be as tedious as to work;
But when they seldom come, they wish'd-for come,
And nothing pleaseth but rare accidents.
So, when this loose behaviour I throw off
And pay the debt I never promised,
By how much better than my word I am,
By so much shall I falsify men's hopes;
And like bright metal on a sullen ground,
My reformation, glittering o'er my fault,
Shall show more goodly and attract more eyes
Than that which hath no foil to set it off.
I'll so offend, to make offence a skill,
Redeeming time when men think least I will."

This soliloquy has puzzled some of the critics and offended others. Furnivall says: "Prince Hal, afterwards Henry the Fifth, is Shakspere's hero in English history. He takes not Cœur-de-lion, Edward the First or the Third, or the Black Prince of Wales, but Henry of Agincourt. See how he draws him by his enemy Vernon's mouth, how modestly he makes him challenge Hotspur, how generously treat that rival when he dies; how he makes him set Douglas free, praise Prince John's deed, save his father's life, give Falstaff the

credit of Hotspur's death! Yet, on the other hand, he shows us him as the companion of loose-living, debauched fellows, highway-robbers, thieves, and brothel-hunters, himself breaking the law, lying to the sheriff on their behalf. And what is the justification, the motive for all this? To astonish men, to win more admiration — 'So when this loose behaviour I throw off,' etc.

"Surely this is a great mistake of Shakspere's; surely in so far as the prince did act from this motive, he was a charlatan and a snob."

When we are tempted to say that Shakespeare has made a mistake, it is well to pause and consider whether the mistake is not ours rather than his. In this instance, it is clearly the critic, not the dramatist, who is at fault. Furnivall seems to have overlooked the exigencies of the stage soliloquy, which, while it is a device for unfolding to us the inmost thoughts and feelings of the person, does not in all cases present them in the exact form in which they exist in his mind and heart. Here, for example, we may readily admit all that Henry claims for himself, without supposing that he would have said it, even to himself, in the formal way in which the dramatist is compelled to give it. There is an element of sophistry in it, we may admit, but no snobbishness. The young man is not wholly forgetful of his rank and his responsibilities. When his conscience pricks him for yielding to the temptation to study low life in London, he excuses himself with the

thought that the burden of these responsibilities is not yet laid upon his shoulders. He justifies his present fooleries as the harmless whim of a young man who has nothing of importance to do; and he promises himself that when the call of duty comes he will obey it. Thus doing, he says that he shall appear like the sun breaking through clouds, the brighter for its temporary obscuration.

This thought follows, not precedes, the conduct to which it refers; it is a comment upon it as it will strike others, not a reminiscence of the motive that prompted it. If, at the outset, he had deliberately planned his wild career with a view to the impression he now suggests it will make, it would have been a piece of contemptible stage trickery; but we may be sure that Henry was incapable of thus shaping his behaviour for mere theatrical effect, and Shakespeare was incapable of the blunder it would have been to represent him as doing it.

As the poet approached his task in this final portion of the trilogy he must have felt the peculiar difficulties it involved. The title-page of the first edition of the play terms it a "chronicle history," and, whether Shakespeare was responsible for this designation or not, it aptly expresses the character of the production. It is an epical treatment of his subject, though cast in a dramatic mould. Like Homer, the poet begins by invoking the Muse, and, like the ancient poet, he dwells at times on details prosaic in themselves — such as the

grounds of Henry's title to the crown of France — but which, though unpoetical, were an important part of the history, and therefore interesting to his countrymen. The choruses, which, while they answer a purpose in bridging over the long intervals in the action, are not absolutely necessary, appear to have been due in part to this semi-dramatic method of composition. As has been well said, they are "a series of brief lyrical poems, for, though not lyrical in metre, they are strictly so in spirit, crowded with a quick succession of rapidly passing brilliant scenes, majestic images, glowing thoughts, and kindling words."

The result of this peculiar treatment of the poet's materials is naturally unlike all his other dramas. As a recent critic has remarked, "a siege and a battle, with one bit of slight love-making, cannot form a drama, whatever amount of rhetorical patriotic speeches and comic relief are introduced." The King is really all the play; it is a "magnificent monologue," and he the speaker of it. The other characters serve little purpose except to afford him breathing-spaces, and to set off his glory by contrast. In the preceding plays, as we have seen, we got, "under the veil of wildness," glimpses of his nobler nature. He was the "true prince" even when he played the fool for lack of anything better to do. Weary with the formality of court life, he sought relief and diversion in scenes of low life — low, but with no shame about it — filled with characters worthless enough, but interesting as studies of

human nature. The Prince mingled with them, but was not one of them. He never forgot his royal destiny, never lost his true self, but let it lie latent, ready to awake when the call should come for action worthy of it.

And now the prince to whose advent to the throne his father and all who were thoughtful for the weal of England looked forward with fear and anxiety, has become the king — and what a change! His prodigal habits drop from him like a jester's robe that he had assumed as a disguise, and the real man who had been masquerading in them stands forth "every inch a king" — a king to whom the sturdiest republican might concede the divine right to rule, so completely do all royal gifts and graces unite in his character. He is profoundly conscious of his responsibilities and duties as a sovereign, yet not weakly sinking under them, but accepting the trust as from God, and doing the work as for God, relying on Him in battle, and rendering to Him the praise of the victory. This was, indeed, not the Henry of history; but as an ideal hero, the perfect flower of chivalry and piety, the character is unrivalled in its way in Shakespeare's long gallery of manly portraiture.

Among the comments on the character by the critics, I know of nothing better than those of Gervinus,[1] from which I am tempted to add some extracts: —

[1] *Shakespeare Commentaries*, by Dr. G. G. Gervinus, translated by F. E. Bunnett: revised ed. (London, 1875), p. 340 fol. (by permission).

"The whole interest of our play lies in the development of the ethical character of the hero. After the poet has delineated his careless youthful life in 1 *Henry IV.*, and in 2 *Henry IV.* has shown the sting of reflection and consideration piercing his soul as the period of self-dependence approaches, he now displays Henry as arrived at the post of his vocation, and exhibits the king acting up to his resolutions for the future. At the very beginning of the play we are at once informed of the utter change which has passed over him. . . . The poet expressly tells us, through the prelates who discuss the king in the first scene, that there are no miracles, either in his poetry or in the world, and that the natural grounds for this wonderful change are to be sought for really in the unpromising school of this apparently untutored man. There this many-sidedness was developed which now astonishes them in him, and on account of which he now appears equally acquainted with all things, ecclesiastical and secular, in the cabinet as in the field. He no longer squanders his now valuable time, but weighs it to the last grain; the curb of mildness and mercy is now placed on his passions, and even foreign lands conjecture that

> 'his vanities forespent
> Were but the outside of the Roman Brutus,
> Covering discretion with a coat of folly.' . . .

"In his courtship and on the day of battle Henry is just as plain a king as if he had 'sold his farm to buy

his crown.' He has shaken off his old dissolute companions, but the remembrances of that simple intercourse are recalled to our mind at every moment. The same inclination to rove about with the common men in his army, the old mildness and familiarity, and the same love for an innocent jest, exist in him now as then, without derogating in the least from his kingly dignity. He leaves his nobles waiting in his tent while he visits the posts of his soldiers; the old habit of night-watching is of use to him now; he sounds the disposition of individuals; he encourages them without high-sounding words; he fortifies them without ostentation; he can preach to them and solve moral scruples, and can make himself intelligible to them; he contrives a trick quite of the old kind in the moment of most gloomy suspense; like a brother, he borrows the cloak of the old Erpingham; he familiarly allows his countryman Fluellen to join freely in his conversation with the herald; and in his short appeal before the battle he declares all to be his brothers who on this Crispin's day shed their blood with him. . . .

"The night before and day during the battle, which form the centre of our play, is a period so prominent, and one in which such manifold moods, emotions, and passions, are roused and crossed, that the best opportunity was here afforded to the poet for exhibiting to our view this many-sided man in all the richness and diversity of his nature. When the mind is quickened, he himself says 'the organs break up their drowsy

grave, and newly move with casted slough and fresh legerity;' and thus is it with him in this great and decisive moment. We see him in a short time alternate between the most varied emotions and positions, ever the same master over himself, or we may rather say, over the opportunity and the matter which lie for the moment before him. . . .

"How popular after his old fashion, and at the same time how sublime, is his encouragement to the battle! How calm his last words to the French herald! How far is he from being over-hasty in giving credit to the victory! When he hears of the touching death of the noble York, how near is he to tears! and at the same moment, alarmed by a new tumult, how steeled to a bloody command! how impatiently furious at the last resistance! and at the moment when victory decides for him, how pious and how humble! And again, a short time after this solemn elevation of mind, he concludes his joke with Williams, careful even then that no harm should result from it. The poet has continued in the fifth act to show us to the very last the many-sided nature of the king. The terrible warrior is transformed into the merry bridegroom, the humorous vein again rises within him; yet he is not so much in love with his happiness, or so happy in his love, that in the midst of his wooing, and with all his jest and repartee, he would relax the smallest article of the peace which his policy had designed. . . .

"Throughout the whole play, throughout the whole

bearing of the king, sounds the key-note of a religious composure, of a severe conscientiousness, and of a humble modesty. . . . The clergy, at the very beginning of the play, call him a true friend of the Church, and have reason to rejoice over his respect for it, as well as over his knowledge of sacred things. When he is occupied with the plan of war, he charges the Archbishop of Canterbury with a solemn oath to take heed in his counsel; he 'will believe in heart' that what he speaks as to his right to this war is in his 'conscience washed as pure as sin with baptism.' When he has no thought but France, those to God alone 'run before' his business. He receives it as a promising ordinance from God that the treason lurking in his way is 'brought to light.' He delivers his 'puissance into the hand of God, putting it straight in expedition;' 'God before,' he says several times, he will come to take his right. . . . His first word on the certainty of the victory is, 'Praised be God, and not our strength, for it!' When he reviews the greatness of the victory, he says again, 'Take it, God, for it is only thine!' And that this is in earnest, he orders even death to be proclaimed to any who may boast of it or take the honour from God. At his triumphal entry into London, he forbids the sword and helm, the trophies of his warlike deeds, to be borne before him; and the poet says expressly of him, in the prologue, what once the prince had said of himself on that day at Shrewsbury over Percy's body — that he was 'free from vainness and self-glorious pride,

giving full trophy, signal, and ostent, quite from himself to God.' The atonement which his father could not attain to, for want of energetic, preserving, inward stimulus, is accomplished by him. In his prayer to God before the battle, when he wishes that 'the sense of reckoning' may be taken from his soldiers, and that his father's fault may not be thought upon, he declares that he has 'interred anew' Richard's body, has wept over it, and has ordered masses to be said; that he has five hundred poor in yearly pay 'who twice a day their withered hands hold up toward Heaven' for him. The poet, we see plainly, adheres to the character of the age, and invests Henry with all that outward work of repentance which in that day was considered necessary for the expiation of a crime. To many he will appear to have gone too far in this, both as regards his hero, who is otherwise of so unshackled a mind, and himself, rising as he does generally so far above the narrow views of his own, to say nothing of older times. But above this objection, also, the poet soars victoriously in those excellent words which he puts into the mouth of the king at the close of that penitential prayer: —

> 'More will I do;
> Though all that I can do is little worth,
> Since that my penitence comes after all,
> Imploring pardon.'"

NORTHWESTERN
MICHIGAN
COLLEGE

KING HENRY THE FIFTH

DRAMATIS PERSONÆ

King Henry the Fifth.
Duke of Gloucester, } brothers to the King.
Duke of Bedford, }
Duke of Exeter, uncle to the King.
Duke of York, cousin to the King.
Earls of Salisbury, Westmoreland, and Warwick.
Archbishop of Canterbury.
Bishop of Ely.
Earl of Cambridge.
Lord Scroop
Sir Thomas Grey.
Sir Thomas Erpingham, Gower, Fluellen, Macmorris, Jamy, officers in King Henry's army.
Bates, Court, Williams, soldiers in the same.
Pistol, Nym, Bardolph.
Boy
A Herald.
Charles the Sixth, King of France.
Lewis, the Dauphin.
Dukes of Burgundy, Orleans, and Bourbon.
The Constable of France.
Rambures and Grandpré, French Lords.
Governor of Harfleur.
Montjoy, a French herald
Ambassadors to the King of England.

Isabel, Queen of France
Katherine, daughter to Charles and Isabel.
Alice, a lady attending on her.
Hostess of a tavern in Eastcheap, formerly Mistress Quickly, and now married to Pistol.

Lords, Ladies, Officers, Soldiers, Citizens, Messengers, and Attendants.

Chorus.

Scene: *England; afterwards France.*

HENRY V. AT AGINCOURT

ACT I

PROLOGUE

Enter Chorus

Chorus. O for a Muse of fire, that would ascend
The brightest heaven of invention,
A kingdom for a stage, princes to act,
And monarchs to behold the swelling scene!
Then should the warlike Harry, like himself,
Assume the port of Mars; and at his heels,
Leash'd in like hounds, should famine, sword, and fire
Crouch for employment. But pardon, gentles all,
The flat unraised spirit that hath dar'd
On this unworthy scaffold to bring forth
So great an object. Can this cockpit hold
The vasty fields of France? or may we cram

Within this wooden O the very casques
That did affright the air at Agincourt?
O, pardon! since a crooked figure may
Attest in little place a million;
And let us, ciphers to this great accompt,
On your imaginary forces work.
Suppose within the girdle of these walls
Are now confin'd two mighty monarchies,
Whose high-upreared and abutting fronts
The perilous, narrow ocean parts asunder.
Piece out our imperfections with your thoughts;
Into a thousand parts divide one man,
And make imaginary puissance.
Think, when we talk of horses, that you see them
Printing their proud hoofs i' the receiving earth.
For 't is your thoughts that now must deck our kings,
Carry them here and there, jumping o'er times,
Turning the accomplishment of many years
Into an hour-glass; for the which supply,
Admit me Chorus to this history;
Who prologue-like your humble patience pray,
Gently to hear, kindly to judge, our play. [*Exit.*

SCENE I. *London. An ante-chamber in the King's Palace*

Enter the ARCHBISHOP OF CANTERBURY *and the* BISHOP OF ELY

Canterbury. My lord, I 'll tell you; that self bill is urg'd

Which in the eleventh year of the last king's reign
Was like, and had indeed against us pass'd,
But that the scambling and unquiet time
Did push it out of farther question.

Ely. But how, my lord, shall we resist it now?

Canterbury. It must be thought on. If it pass against us,
We lose the better half of our possession,
For all the temporal lands which men devout
By testament have given to the church
Would they strip from us; being valued thus:
As much as would maintain, to the king's honour,
Full fifteen earls and fifteen hundred knights,
Six thousand and two hundred good esquires;
And, to relief of lazars and weak age,
Of indigent faint souls past corporal toil,
A hundred almshouses right well supplied;
And to the coffers of the king beside,
A thousand pounds by the year. Thus runs the bill.

Ely. This would drink deep.

Canterbury. 'T would drink the cup and all.

Ely. But what prevention?

Canterbury. The king is full of grace and fair regard.

Ely. And a true lover of the holy church.

Canterbury. The courses of his youth promis'd it not.
The breath no sooner left his father's body
But that his wildness, mortified in him,
Seem'd to die too; yea, at that very moment

Consideration, like an angel, came
And whipp'd the offending Adam out of him,
Leaving his body as a paradise
To envelope and contain celestial spirits.
Never was such a sudden scholar made;
Never came reformation in a flood
With such a heady currance, scouring faults;
Nor never hydra-headed wilfulness
So soon did lose his seat and all at once
As in this king.

Ely. We are blessed in the change.

Canterbury. Hear him but reason in divinity,
And, all-admiring, with an inward wish
You would desire the king were made a prelate;
Hear him debate of commonwealth affairs,
You would say it hath been all in all his study;
List his discourse of war, and you shall hear
A fearful battle render'd you in music;
Turn him to any cause of policy,
The Gordian knot of it he will unloose,
Familiar as his garter; that, when he speaks,
The air, a charter'd libertine, is still,
And the mute wonder lurketh in men's ears,
To steal his sweet and honey'd sentences;
So that the art and practic part of life
Must be the mistress to this theoric,
Which is a wonder how his grace should glean it,
Since his addiction was to courses vain,
His companies unletter'd, rude, and shallow,

His hours fill'd up with riots, banquets, sports,
And never noted in him any study,
Any retirement, any sequestration
From open haunts and popularity.

Ely. The strawberry grows underneath the nettle,
And wholesome berries thrive and ripen best
Neighbour'd by fruit of baser quality;
And so the prince obscur'd his contemplation
Under the veil of wildness, which, no doubt,
Grew like the summer grass, fastest by night,
Unseen, yet crescive in his faculty.

Canterbury. It must be so; for miracles are ceas'd,
And therefore we must needs admit the means
How things are perfected.

Ely. But, my good lord,
How now for mitigation of this bill
Urg'd by the commons? Doth his majesty
Incline to it or no?

Canterbury. He seems indifferent,
Or rather swaying more upon our part
Than cherishing the exhibiters against us;
For I have made an offer to his majesty, —
Upon our spiritual convocation
And in regard of causes now in hand,
Which I have open'd to his grace at large,
As touching France, — to give a greater sum
Than ever at one time the clergy yet
Did to his predecessors part withal.

Ely. How did this offer seem receiv'd, my lord?

Canterbury. With good acceptance of his majesty;
Save that there was not time enough to hear,
As I perceiv'd his grace would fain have done,
The severals and unhidden passages
Of his true titles to some certain dukedoms.
And generally to the crown and seat of France
Deriv'd from Edward, his great-grandfather.

Ely. What was the impediment that broke this off?

Canterbury. The French ambassador upon that instant 91
Crav'd audience; and the hour, I think, is come
To give him hearing. Is it four o'clock?

Ely. It is.

Canterbury. Then go we in, to know his embassy,
Which I could with a ready guess declare
Before the Frenchman speak a word of it.

Ely. I 'll wait upon you, and I long to hear it. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE II. *The Same. The Presence-chamber*

Enter KING HENRY, GLOUCESTER, BEDFORD, EXETER, WARWICK, WESTMORELAND, *and* Attendants

King Henry. Where is my gracious Lord of Canterbury?

Exeter. Not here in presence.

King Henry. Send for him, good uncle.

Westmoreland. Shall we call in the ambassador, my liege?

King Henry. Not yet, my cousin; we would be resolv'd,
Before we hear him, of some things of weight
That task our thoughts, concerning us and France.

Enter the ARCHBISHOP OF CANTERBURY *and the* BISHOP OF ELY

Canterbury. God and his angels guard your sacred throne,
And make you long become it!

King Henry. Sure, we thank you.
My learned lord, we pray you to proceed
And justly and religiously unfold
Why the law Salique that they have in France
Or should, or should not, bar us in our claim.
And God forbid, my dear and faithful lord,
That you should fashion, wrest, or bow your reading,
Or nicely charge your understanding soul
With opening titles miscreate, whose right
Suits not in native colours with the truth;
For God doth know how many now in health
Shall drop their blood in approbation
Of what your reverence shall incite us to.
Therefore take heed how you impawn our person,
How you awake our sleeping sword of war.
We charge you, in the name of God, take heed;
For never two such kingdoms did contend
Without much fall of blood, whose guiltless drops
Are every one a woe, a sore complaint

'Gainst him whose wrong gives edge unto the swords
That make such waste in brief mortality.
Under this conjuration speak, my lord;
For we will hear, note, and believe in heart
That what you speak is in your conscience wash'd
As pure as sin with baptism.

Canterbury. Then hear me, gracious sovereign, and you peers,
That owe yourselves, your lives, and services
To this imperial throne. There is no bar
To make against your highness' claim to France
But this, which they produce from Pharamond, —
'In terram Salicam mulieres ne succedant:'
'No woman shall succeed in Salique land;'
Which Salique land the French unjustly gloze
To be the realm of France, and Pharamond
The founder of this law and female bar.
Yet their own authors faithfully affirm
That the land Salique is in Germany
Between the floods of Sala and of Elbe,
Where Charles the Great, having subdued the Saxons,
There left behind and settled certain French,
Who, holding in disdain the German women
For some dishonest manners of their life,
Establish'd then this law; to wit, no female
Should be inheritrix in Salique land,
Which Salique, as I said, 'twixt Elbe and Sala,
Is at this day in Germany call'd Meisen.
Then doth it well appear the Salique law

Was not devised for the realm of France;
Nor did the French possess the Salique land
Until four hundred one and twenty years
After defunction of King Pharamond,
Idly suppos'd the founder of this law,
Who died within the year of our redemption
Four hundred twenty-six; and Charles the Great
Subdued the Saxons, and did seat the French
Beyond the river Sala in the year
Eight hundred five. Besides, their writers say,
King Pepin, which deposed Childeric,
Did, as heir general, being descended
Of Blithild, which was daughter to King Clothair,
Make claim and title to the crown of France.
Hugh Capet also, — who usurp'd the crown
Of Charles the duke of Lorraine, sole heir male
Of the true line and stock of Charles the Great, —
To fine his title with some shows of truth,
Though, in pure truth, it was corrupt and naught,
Convey'd himself as heir to the Lady Lingare,
Daughter to Charlemain, who was the son
To Lewis the emperor, and Lewis the son
Of Charles the Great. Also King Lewis the Tenth,
Who was sole heir to the usurper Capet,
Could not keep quiet in his conscience,
Wearing the crown of France, till satisfied
That fair Queen Isabel, his grandmother,
Was lineal of the Lady Ermengare,
Daughter to Charles the foresaid duke of Lorraine;

By the which marriage the line of Charles the Great
Was re-united to the crown of France.
So that, as clear as is the summer's sun,
King Pepin's title and Hugh Capet's claim,
King Lewis his satisfaction, all appear
To hold in right and title of the female.
So do the kings of France unto this day;
Howbeit they would hold up this Salique law
To bar your highness claiming from the female,
And rather choose to hide them in a net
Than amply to imbar their crooked titles
Usurp'd from you and your progenitors.

King Henry. May I with right and conscience make this claim?

Canterbury. The sin upon my head, dread sovereign!

For in the book of Numbers is it writ,
When the man dies, let the inheritance
Descend unto the daughter. Gracious lord,
Stand for your own; unwind your bloody flag;
Look back into your mighty ancestors.
Go, my dread lord, to your great-grandsire's tomb,
From whom you claim; invoke his warlike spirit,
And your great-uncle's, Edward the Black Prince,
Who on the French ground play'd a tragedy,
Making defeat on the full power of France,
Whiles his most mighty father on a hill
Stood smiling to behold his lion's whelp
Forage in blood of French nobility.

O noble English, that could entertain
With half their forces the full pride of France,
And let another half stand laughing by,
All out of work and cold for action!

Ely. Awake remembrance of these valiant dead,
And with your puissant arm renew their feats.
You are their heir, you sit upon their throne;
The blood and courage that renowned them
Runs in your veins; and my thrice-puissant liege
Is in the very May-morn of his youth,
Ripe for exploits and mighty enterprises.

Exeter. Your brother kings and monarchs of the earth
Do all expect that you should rouse yourself,
As did the former lions of your blood.

Westmoreland. They know your grace hath cause and means and might.
So hath your highness; never king of England
Had nobles richer and more loyal subjects,
Whose hearts have left their bodies here in England
And lie pavilion'd in the fields of France.

Canterbury. O, let their bodies follow, my dear liege,
With blood and sword and fire to win your right;
In aid whereof we of the spiritualty
Will raise your highness such a mighty sum
As never did the clergy at one time
Bring in to any of your ancestors.

King Henry. We must not only arm to invade the French,

But lay down our proportions to defend
Against the Scot, who will make road upon us
With all advantages.

Canterbury. They of those marches, gracious sovereign,

Shall be a wall sufficient to defend
Our inland from the pilfering borderers.

King Henry. We do not mean the coursing snatchers only,
But fear the main intendment of the Scot,
Who hath been still a giddy neighbour to us:
For you shall read that my great-grandfather
Never went with his forces into France
But that the Scot on his unfurnish'd kingdom
Came pouring, like the tide into a breach,
With ample and brim fulness of his force,
Galling the gleaned land with hot assays,
Girding with grievous siege castles and towns;
That England, being empty of defence,
Hath shook and trembled at the ill neighbourhood.

Canterbury. She hath been then more fear'd than harm'd, my liege,
For hear her but exampled by herself:
When all her chivalry hath been in France,
And she a mourning widow of her nobles,
She hath herself not only well defended,
But taken and impounded as a stray
The King of Scots, whom she did send to France,
To fill King Edward's fame with prisoner kings,

And make her chronicle as rich with praise
As is the ooze and bottom of the sea
With sunken wrack and sumless treasuries.

Westmoreland. But there 's a saying very old and true,

'If that you will France win,
Then with Scotland first begin;'

For once the eagle England being in prey,
To her unguarded nest the weasel Scot
Comes sneaking, and so sucks her princely eggs,
Playing the mouse in absence of the cat,
To tear and havoc more than she can eat.

Exeter. It follows then the cat must stay at home;
Yet that is but a curst necessity,
Since we have locks to safeguard necessaries,
And pretty traps to catch the petty thieves.
While that the armed hand doth fight abroad,
The advised head defends itself at home;
For government, though high and low and lower,
Put into parts, doth keep in one consent,
Congreeing in a full and natural close,
Like music.

Canterbury. Therefore doth heaven divide
The state of man in divers functions,
Setting endeavour in continual motion,
To which is fixed, as an aim or butt,
Obedience; for so work the honey-bees,
Creatures that by a rule in nature teach
The act of order to a peopled kingdom.

They have a king and officers of sorts;
Where some, like magistrates, correct at home,
Others, like merchants, venture trade abroad,
Others, like soldiers, armed in their stings,
Make boot upon the summer's velvet buds,
Which pillage they with merry march bring home
To the tent-royal of their emperor,
Who, busied in his majesty, surveys
The singing masons building roofs of gold,
The civil citizens kneading up the honey,
The poor mechanic porters crowding in
Their heavy burdens at his narrow gate,
The sad-eyed justice, with his surly hum,
Delivering o'er to executors pale
The lazy yawning drone. I this infer,
That many things, having full reference
To one consent, may work contrariously.
As many arrows, loosed several ways,
Come to one mark, as many ways meet in one town,
As many fresh streams meet in one salt sea,
As many lines close in the dial's centre,
So many a thousand actions, once afoot,
End in one purpose and be all well borne
Without defeat. Therefore to France, my liege.
Divide your happy England into four,
Whereof take you one quarter into France,
And you withal shall make all Gallia shake.
If we, with thrice such powers left at home,
Cannot defend our own doors from the dog,

Let us be worried and our nation lose
The name of hardiness and policy.
King Henry. Call in the messengers sent from the Dauphin. — [*Exeunt some Attendants.*
Now are we well resolv'd, and, by God's help,
And yours, the noble sinews of our power,
France being ours, we 'll bend it to our awe,
Or break it all to pieces; or there we 'll sit,
Ruling in large and ample empery
O'er France and all her almost kingly dukedoms,
Or lay these bones in an unworthy urn,
Tombless, with no remembrance over them.
Either our history shall with full mouth
Speak freely of our acts, or else our grave,
Like Turkish mute, shall have a tongueless mouth,
Not worshipp'd with a waxen epitaph. —

Enter Ambassadors *of France*

Now are we well prepar'd to know the pleasure
Of our fair cousin Dauphin; for we hear
Your greeting is from him, not from the king.
First Ambassador. May 't please your majesty to give us leave
Freely to render what we have in charge;
Or shall we sparingly show you far off
The Dauphin's meaning and our embassy?
King Henry. We are no tyrant, but a Christian king,
Unto whose grace our passion is as subject
As are our wretches fetter'd in our prisons;

Therefore with frank and with uncurbed plainness
Tell us the Dauphin's mind.
First Ambassador. Thus then, in few:
Your highness, lately sending into France,
Did claim some certain dukedoms, in the right
Of your great predecessor, King Edward the Third.
In answer of which claim, the prince our master
Says that you savour too much of your youth,
And bids you be advis'd there 's nought in France
That can be with a nimble galliard won;
You cannot revel into dukedoms there.
He therefore sends you, meeter for your spirit,
This tun of treasure; and, in lieu of this,
Desires you let the dukedoms that you claim
Hear no more of you. This the Dauphin speaks.
King Henry. What treasure, uncle?
Exeter. Tennis-balls, my liege.
King Henry. We are glad the Dauphin is so pleasant with us;
His present and your pains we thank you for.
When we have match'd our rackets to these balls,
We will, in France, by God's grace, play a set
Shall strike his father's crown into the hazard.
Tell him he hath made a match with such a wrangler
That all the courts of France will be disturb'd
With chases. And we understand him well,
How he comes o'er us with our wilder days,
Not measuring what use we made of them.
We never valued this poor seat of England,

And therefore, living hence, did give ourself
To barbarous license; as 't is ever common
That men are merriest when they are from home.
But tell the Dauphin I will keep my state,
Be like a king, and show my sail of greatness
When I do rouse me in my throne of France:
For that I have laid by my majesty
And plodded like a man for working-days,
But I will rise there with so full a glory
That I will dazzle all the eyes of France,
Yea, strike the Dauphin blind to look on us.
And tell the pleasant prince this mock of his
Hath turn'd his balls to gun-stones, and his soul
Shall stand sore charged for the wasteful vengeance
That shall fly with them; for many a thousand widows
Shall this his mock mock out of their dear husbands,
Mock mothers from their sons, mock castles down,
And some are yet ungotten and unborn
That shall have cause to curse the Dauphin's scorn.
But this lies all within the will of God,
To whom I do appeal; and in whose name
Tell you the Dauphin I am coming on,
To venge me as I may, and to put forth
My rightful hand in a well-hallow'd cause.
So get you hence in peace; and tell the Dauphin
His jest will savour but of shallow wit
When thousands weep more than did laugh at it. —
Convey them with safe conduct. — Fare you well.

[*Exeunt Ambassadors.*

Exeter. This was a merry message.

King Henry. We hope to make the sender blush at it.

Therefore, my lords, omit no happy hour
That may give furtherance to our expedition;
For we have now no thought in us but France,
Save those to God that run before our business.
Therefore let our proportions for these wars
Be soon collected, and all things thought upon
That may with reasonable swiftness add
More feathers to our wings; for, God before,
We 'll chide this Dauphin at his father's door.
Therefore let every man now task his thought,
That this fair action may on foot be brought.

[*Exeunt. Flourish.*

Room in the French King's Palace

ACT II

Prologue

Enter Chorus

Chorus. Now all the youth of England are on fire,
And silken dalliance in the wardrobe lies.
Now thrive the armourers, and honour's thought
Reigns solely in the breast of every man.
They sell the pasture now to buy the horse,
Following the mirror of all Christian kings,

With winged heels, as English Mercuries;
For now sits Expectation in the air,
And hides a sword from hilts unto the point
With crowns imperial, crowns, and coronets,
Promis'd to Harry and his followers.
The French, advis'd by good intelligence
Of this most dreadful preparation,
Shake in their fear, and with pale policy
Seek to divert the English purposes. —
O England! model to thy inward greatness,
Like little body with a mighty heart,
What mightst thou do that honour would thee do,
Were all thy children kind and natural!
But see thy fault! France hath in thee found out
A nest of hollow bosoms which he fills
With treacherous crowns; and three corrupted men,
One, Richard Earl of Cambridge, and the second,
Henry Lord Scroop of Masham, and the third,
Sir Thomas Grey, knight, of Northumberland,
Have, for the gilt of France, — O guilt indeed! —
Confirmed conspiracy with fearful France,
And by their hands this grace of kings must die,
If hell and treason hold their promises,
Ere he take ship for France, and in Southampton.
Linger your patience on, and well digest
The abuse of distance; force a play.
The sum is paid; the traitors are agreed;
The king is set from London; and the scene
Is now transported, gentles, to Southampton.

There is the playhouse now, there must you sit;
And thence to France shall we convey you safe,
And bring you back, charming the narrow seas
To give you gentle pass, for, if we may
We 'll not offend one stomach with our play.
But, till the king come forth, and not till then,
Unto Southampton do we shift our scene. [*Exit.*

Scene I. *London. A Street*

Enter Corporal Nym *and* Lieutenant Bardolph

Bardolph. Well met, Corporal Nym.

Nym. Good morrow, Lieutenant Bardolph.

Bardolph. What, are Ancient Pistol and you friends yet?

Nym. For my part, I care not. I say little, but when time shall serve there shall be smiles; but that shall be as it may. I dare not fight, but I will wink and hold out mine iron. It is a simple one; but what though? it will toast cheese, and it will endure cold as another man's sword will; and there 's an end.

Bardolph. I will bestow a breakfast to make you friends, and we 'll be all three sworn brothers to France; let it be so, good Corporal Nym.

Nym. Faith, I will live so long as I may, that 's the certain of it, and when I cannot live any longer I will do as I may; that is my rest, that is the rendezvous of it.

Bardolph. It is certain, corporal, that he is married to Nell Quickly; and certainly she did you wrong, for you were troth-plight to her.

Nym. I cannot tell; things must be as they may. Men may sleep, and they may have their throats about them at that time; and some say knives have edges. It must be as it may; though patience be a tired mare, yet she will plod. There must be conclusions. Well, I cannot tell.

Enter PISTOL *and* Hostess

Bardolph. Here comes Ancient Pistol and his wife; good corporal, be patient here. How now, mine host Pistol!

Pistol. Base tike, call'st thou me host?
Now, by this hand, I swear, I scorn the term;
Nor shall my Nell keep lodgers.

Hostess. No, by my troth, not long; for we cannot lodge and board a dozen or fourteen gentlewomen that live honestly by the prick of their needles but it will be thought we keep a bawdy house straight. — [*Nym and Pistol draw.*] O well a day, Lady, if he be not drawn now! we shall see wilful adultery and murder committed.

Bardolph. Good lieutenant! good corporal! offer nothing here.

Nym. Pish!

Pistol. Pish for thee, Iceland dog! thou prick-ear'd cur of Iceland!

Hostess. Good Corporal Nym, show thy valour, and put up your sword.

Nym. Will you shog off? I would have you solus.

Pistol. 'Solus,' egregious dog? O viper vile!
The 'solus' in thy most mervailous face;
The 'solus' in thy teeth, and in thy throat,
And in thy hateful lungs, yea, in thy maw, perdy,
And, which is worse, within thy nasty mouth!
I do retort the 'solus' in thy bowels;
For I can take, and Pistol's cock is up,
And flashing fire will follow.

Nym. I am not Barbason; you cannot conjure me. I have an humour to knock you indifferently well. If you grow foul with me, Pistol, I will scour you with my rapier, as I may, in fair terms. If you would walk off, I would prick your guts a little, in good terms, as I may; and that 's the humour of it.

Pistol. O braggart vile, and damned furious wight!
The grave doth gape, and doting death is near;
Therefore exhale.

Bardolph. Hear me, hear me what I say: he that strikes the first stroke, I 'll run him up to the hilts, as I am a soldier. [*Draws.*

Pistol. An oath of mickle might; and fury shall abate.
Give me thy fist, thy fore-foot to me give;
Thy spirits are most tall.

Nym. I will cut thy throat, one time or other, in fair terms; that is the humour of it.

Pistol. 'Couple a gorge!'
That is the word. I thee defy again.
O hound of Crete, think'st thou my spouse to get?
No; to the spital go,
And from the powdering-tub of infamy
Fetch forth the lazar kite of Cressid's kind,
Doll Tearsheet she by name, and her espouse.
I have, and I will hold, the quondam Quickly
For the only she; and — pauca, there's enough.
Go to.

Enter the Boy

Boy. Mine host Pistol, you must come to my master, — and you, hostess; he is very sick, and would to bed. — Good Bardolph, put thy face between his sheets, and do the office of a warming-pan. Faith, he 's very ill.

Bardolph. Away, you rogue!

Hostess. By my troth, he 'll yield the crow a pudding one of these days. The king has killed his heart. — Good husband, come home presently.

[*Exeunt Hostess and Boy.*

Bardolph. Come, shall I make you two friends? We must to France together; why the devil should we keep knives to cut one another's throats?

Pistol. Let floods o'erswell, and fiends for food howl on!

Nym. You 'll pay me the eight shillings I won of you at betting?

Pistol. Base is the slave that pays.

Nym. That now I will have; that 's the humour of it.

Pistol. As manhood shall compound; push home.

[*They draw.*

Bardolph. By this sword, he that makes the first thrust, I 'll kill him; by this sword, I will.

Pistol. Sword is an oath, and oaths must have their course.

Bardolph. Corporal Nym, an thou wilt be friends, be friends; an thou wilt not, why, then, be enemies with me too. Prithee, put up.

Nym. I shall have my eight shillings I won of you at betting?

Pistol. A noble shalt thou have, and present pay;
And liquor likewise will I give to thee,
And friendship shall combine, and brotherhood.
I 'll live by Nym, and Nym shall live by me.
Is not this just? for I shall sutler be
Unto the camp, and profits will accrue.
Give me thy hand.

Nym. I shall have my noble?

Pistol. In cash most justly paid.

Nym. Well, then, that 's the humour of 't.

Re-enter Hostess

Hostess. As ever you came of women, come in quickly to Sir John. Ah, poor heart! he is so shaked of a burning quotidian tertian that it is

most lamentable to behold. Sweet men, come to him.

Nym. The king hath run bad humours on the knight; that 's the even of it.

Pistol. Nym, thou hast spoke the right;
His heart is fracted and corroborate.

Nym. The king is a good king, but it must be as it may; he passes some humours and careers.

Pistol. Let us condole the knight; for lambkins we will live.

Scene II. *Southampton. A Council-chamber*

Enter Exeter, Bedford, *and* Westmoreland

Bedford. Fore God, his grace is bold, to trust these traitors.

Exeter. They shall be apprehended by and by.

Westmoreland. How smooth and even they do bear themselves,
As if allegiance in their bosoms sat,
Crowned with faith and constant loyalty!

Bedford. The king hath note of all that they intend,
By interception which they dream not of.

Exeter. Nay, but the man that was his bedfellow,
Whom he hath dull'd and cloy'd with gracious favours,—
That he should, for a foreign purse, so sell
His sovereign's life to death and treachery!

Trumpets sound. *Enter* KING HENRY, SCROOP, CAMBRIDGE, GREY, *and* Attendants

King Henry. Now sits the wind fair, and we will aboard.
My lord of Cambridge, and my kind Lord of Masham,
And you, my gentle knight, give me your thoughts.
Think you not that the powers we bear with us
Will cut their passage through the force of France,
Doing the execution and the act
For which we have in head assembled them?

Scroop. No doubt, my liege, if each man do his best.

King Henry. I doubt not that; since we are well persuaded
We carry not a heart with us from hence
That grows not in a fair consent with ours,
Nor leave not one behind that doth not wish
Success and conquest to attend on us.

Cambridge. Never was monarch better fear'd and lov'd
Than is your majesty: there 's not, I think, a subject
That sits in heart-grief and uneasiness
Under the sweet shade of your government.

Grey. True; those that were your father's enemies
Have steep'd their galls in honey, and do serve you
With hearts create of duty and of zeal.

King Henry. We therefore have great cause of thankfulness,
And shall forget the office of our hand

Sooner than quittance of desert and merit
According to the weight and worthiness.

Scroop. So service shall with steeled sinews toil,
And labour shall refresh itself with hope,
To do your grace incessant services.

King Henry. We judge no less. — Uncle of Exeter,
Enlarge the man committed yesterday
That rail'd against our person; we consider
It was excess of wine that set him on,
And on his more advice we pardon him.

Scroop. That 's mercy, but too much security;
Let him be punish'd, sovereign, lest example
Breed, by his sufferance, more of such a kind.

King Henry. O, let us yet be merciful.

Cambridge. So may your highness, and yet punish too.

Grey. Sir,
You show great mercy if you give him life,
After the taste of much correction.

King Henry. Alas, your too much care and love of me
Are heavy orisons 'gainst this poor wretch!
If little faults, proceeding on distemper,
Shall not be wink'd at, how shall we stretch our eye
When capital crimes, chew'd, swallow'd, and digested,
Appear before us? — We 'll yet enlarge that man,
Though Cambridge, Scroop, and Grey, in their dear care
And tender preservation of our person,
Would have him punish'd. — And now to our French causes:
Who are the late commissioners?

Cambridge. I one, my lord;
Your highness bade me ask for it to-day.
Scroop. So did you me, my liege.
Grey. And I, my royal sovereign.
King Henry. Then, Richard Earl of Cambridge, there is yours; —
There yours, Lord Scroop of Masham; — and, sir knight,
Grey of Northumberland, this same is yours. —
Read them; and know, I know your worthiness. —
My lord of Westmoreland, and uncle Exeter,
We will aboard to-night. — Why, how now, gentlemen!
What see you in those papers that you lose
So much complexion? — Look ye, how they change!
Their cheeks are paper. — Why, what read you there
That hath so cowarded and chas'd your blood
Out of appearance?
Cambridge. I do confess my fault,
And do submit me to your highness' mercy.
Grey. *Scroop.* } To which we all appeal.
King Henry. The mercy that was quick in us but late
By your own counsel is suppress'd and kill'd;
You must not dare, for shame, to talk of mercy,
For your own reasons turn into your bosoms,
As dogs upon their masters, worrying you. —
See you, my princes and my noble peers,
These English monsters! My lord of Cambridge here, —
You know how apt our love was to accord

To furnish him with all appertinents
Belonging to his honour; and this man
Hath, for a few light crowns, lightly conspir'd,
And sworn unto the practices of France,
To kill us here in Hampton; to the which
This knight, no less for bounty bound to us
Than Cambridge is, hath likewise sworn. — But, O,
What shall I say to thee, Lord Scroop? thou cruel,
Ingrateful, savage, and inhuman creature!
Thou that didst bear the key of all my counsels,
That knew'st the very bottom of my soul,
That almost mightst have coin'd me into gold,
Wouldst thou have practis'd on me for thy use,
May it be possible that foreign hire
Could out of thee extract one spark of evil
That might annoy my finger? 't is so strange
That, though the truth of it stands off as gross
As black and white, my eye will scarcely see it.
Treason and murther ever kept together,
As two yoke-devils sworn to either's purpose,
Working so grossly in a natural cause
That admiration did not whoop at them;
But thou, 'gainst all proportion, didst bring in
Wonder to wait on treason and on murther,
And whatsoever cunning fiend it was
That wrought upon thee so preposterously
Hath got the voice in hell for excellence.
All other devils that suggest by treasons
Do botch and bungle up damnation

With patches, colours, and with forms, being fetch'd
From glistering semblances of piety;
But he that temper'd thee bade thee stand up,
Gave thee no instance why thou shouldst do treason,
Unless to dub thee with the name of traitor.
If that same demon that hath gull'd thee thus
Should with his lion gait walk the whole world,
He might return to vasty Tartar back
And tell the legions, 'I can never win
A soul so easy as that Englishman's.'
O, how hast thou with jealousy infected
The sweetness of affiance! Show men dutiful?
Why, so didst thou; seem they grave and learned?
Why, so didst thou; come they of noble family?
Why, so didst thou; seem they religious?
Why, so didst thou; or are they spare in diet,
Free from gross passion or of mirth or anger,
Constant in spirit, not swerving with the blood,
Garnish'd and deck'd in modest complement,
Not working with the eye without the ear,
And but in purged judgment trusting neither?
Such and so finely bolted didst thou seem;
And thus thy fall hath left a kind of blot,
To mark the full-fraught man and best indued
With some suspicion. I will weep for thee;
For this revolt of thine, methinks, is like
Another fall of man. — Their faults are open.
Arrest them to the answer of the law;
And God acquit them of their practices!

Exeter. I arrest thee of high treason, by the name of Richard Earl of Cambridge.

I arrest thee of high treason, by the name of Henry Lord Scroop of Masham.

I arrest thee of high treason, by the name of Thomas Grey, knight, of Northumberland.

Scroop. Our purposes God justly hath discover'd,
And I repent my fault more than my death,
Which I beseech your highness to forgive,
Although my body pay the price of it.

Cambridge. For me, the gold of France did not seduce,
Although I did admit it as a motive
The sooner to effect what I intended;
But God be thanked for prevention,
Which I in sufferance heartily will rejoice,
Beseeching God and you to pardon me.

Grey. Never did faithful subject more rejoice
At the discovery of most dangerous treason
Than I do at this hour joy o'er myself,
Prevented from a damned enterprise.
My fault, but not my body, pardon, sovereign.

King Henry. God quit you in his mercy! Hear your sentence.
You have conspir'd against our royal person,
Join'd with an enemy proclaim'd, and from his coffers
Receiv'd the golden earnest of our death;
Wherein you would have sold your king to slaughter,
His princes and his peers to servitude,
His subjects to oppression and contempt,

And his whole kingdom into desolation.
Touching our person seek we no revenge;
But we our kingdom's safety must so tender,
Whose ruin you have sought, that to her laws
We do deliver you. Get you therefore hence,
Poor miserable wretches, to your death;
The taste whereof God of his mercy give
You patience to endure, and true repentance
Of all your dear offences! — Bear them hence. —
[*Exeunt Cambridge, Scroop, and Grey, guarded.*
Now, lords, for France; the enterprise whereof
Shall be to you, as us, like glorious.
We doubt not of a fair and lucky war,
Since God so graciously hath brought to light
This dangerous treason lurking in our way
To hinder our beginnings. We doubt not now
But every rub is smoothed on our way.
Then forth, dear countrymen; let us deliver
Our puissance into the hand of God,
Putting it straight in expedition.
Cheerly to sea; the signs of war advance.
No king of England, if not king of France! [*Exeunt.*

Scene III. *London. Before a Tavern*

Enter Pistol, Hostess, Nym, Bardolph, *and* Boy

Hostess. Prithee, honey-sweet husband, let me bring thee to Staines.

Pistol. No; for my manly heart doth yearn. — Bardolph, be blithe. — Nym, rouse thy vaunting veins. — Boy, bristle thy courage up; for Falstaff he is dead, And we must yearn therefore.

Bardolph. Would I were with him, wheresome'er he is, either in heaven or in hell!

Hostess. Nay, sure, he 's not in hell; he 's in Arthur's bosom, if ever man went to Arthur's bosom. A' made a finer end, and went away an it had been any christom child. A' parted even just between twelve and one, even at the turning o' the tide; for after I saw him fumble with the sheets and play with flowers and smile upon his fingers' ends, I knew there was but one way, for his nose was as sharp as a pen and a' babbled of green fields. 'How now, Sir John!' quoth I; 'what, man! be o' good cheer.' So a' cried out 'God, God, God!' three or four times. Now I, to comfort him, bid him a' should not think of God; I hoped there was no need to trouble himself with any such thoughts yet. So a' bade me lay more clothes on his feet. I put my hand into the bed and felt them, and they were as cold as any stone; then I felt to his knees, and they were as cold as any stone, and so upward and upward, and all was as cold as any stone.

Nym. They say he cried out of sack.

Hostess. Ay, that a' did.

Bardolph. And of women.

Hostess. Nay, that a' did not.

Boy. Yes, that a' did, and said they were devils incarnate.

Hostess. A' could never abide carnation; 't was a colour he never liked.

Boy. Do you not remember, a' saw a flea stick upon Bardolph's nose, and a' said it was a black soul burning in hell-fire?

Bardolph. Well, the fuel is gone that maintained that fire; that 's all the riches I got in his service.

Nym. Shall we shog? the king will be gone from Southampton.

Pistol. Come, let 's away. — My love, give me thy lips.
Look to my chattels and my movables.
Let senses rule; the word is 'Pitch and Pay.'
Trust none,
For oaths are straws, men's faiths are wafer-cakes,
And hold-fast is the only dog, my duck;
Therefore, Caveto be thy counsellor.
Go, clear thy crystals. — Yoke-fellows in arms,
Let us to France; like horse-leeches, my boys,
To suck, to suck, the very blood to suck!

Boy. And that 's but unwholesome food, they say.

Pistol. Touch her soft mouth, and march.

Bardolph. Farewell, hostess. [*Kissing her.*

Nym. I cannot kiss, that is the humour of it; but, adieu.

Pistol. Let housewifery appear; keep close, I thee command.

Hostess. Farewell; adieu. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE IV. *France. A Room in the King's Palace*

Flourish. Enter the FRENCH KING, *the* DAUPHIN, *the* DUKES OF BERRI *and* BRETAGNE, *the* CONSTABLE, *and others*

French King. Thus comes the English with full power upon us;
And more than carefully it us concerns
To answer royally in our defences.
Therefore the Dukes of Berri and of Bretagne,
Of Brabant and of Orleans, shall make forth,
And you, Prince Dauphin, with all swift dispatch,
To line and new repair our towns of war
With men of courage and with means defendant;
For England his approaches makes as fierce
As waters to the sucking of a gulf.
It fits us then to be as provident
As fear may teach us out of late examples
Left by the fatal and neglected English
Upon our fields.

Dauphin. My most redoubted father,
It is most meet we arm us 'gainst the foe;
For peace itself should not so dull a kingdom,
Though war nor no known quarrel were in question,
But that defences, musters, preparations,
Should be maintain'd, assembled, and collected,
As were a war in expectation.
Therefore, I say 't is meet we all go forth
To view the sick and feeble parts of France.

And let us do it with no show of fear,
No, with no more than if we heard that England
Were busied with a Whitsun morris-dance;
For, my good liege, she is so idly king'd,
Her sceptre so fantastically borne
By a vain, giddy, shallow, humorous youth,
That fear attends her not.

Constable. O peace, Prince Dauphin!
You are too much mistaken in this king.
Question your grace the late ambassadors,
With what great state he heard their embassy,
How well supplied with noble counsellors,
How modest in exception, and withal
How terrible in constant resolution,
And you shall find his vanities forespent
Were but the outside of the Roman Brutus,
Covering discretion with a coat of folly,
As gardeners do with ordure hide those roots
That shall first spring and be most delicate.

Dauphin. Well, 't is not so, my lord high constable;
But though we think it so, it is no matter.
In cases of defence 't is best to weigh
The enemy more mighty than he seems;
So the proportions of defence are fill'd,
Which of a weak and niggardly projection
Doth, like a miser, spoil his coat with scanting
A little cloth.

French King. Think we King Harry strong;
And, princes, look you strongly arm to meet him.

The kindred of him hath been flesh'd upon us;
And he is bred out of that bloody strain
That haunted us in our familiar paths.
Witness our too much memorable shame
When Cressy battle fatally was struck,
And all our princes captiv'd by the hand
Of that black name, Edward, Black Prince of Wales;
Whiles that his mountain sire, on mountain standing,
Up in the air, crown'd with the golden sun,
Saw his heroical seed, and smil'd to see him,
Mangle the work of nature and deface
The patterns that by God and by French fathers
Had twenty years been made. This is a stem
Of that victorious stock, and let us fear
The native mightiness and fate of him.

Enter a Messenger

Messenger. Ambassadors from Harry King of England
Do crave admittance to your majesty.

French King. We 'll give them present audience. Go and bring them. —

[*Exeunt Messenger and certain Lords.*

You see this chase is hotly follow'd, friends.

Dauphin. Turn head, and stop pursuit; for coward dogs
Most spend their mouths when what they seem to threaten
Runs far before them. Good my sovereign,

Take up the English short, and let them know
Of what a monarchy you are the head.
Self-love, my liege, is not so vile a sin
As self-neglecting.

Re-enter Lords, *with* EXETER *and train.*

French King. From our brother England?

Exeter. From him; and thus he greets your majesty:
He wills you, in the name of God Almighty,
That you divest yourself, and lay apart
The borrow'd glories that by gift of heaven,
By law of nature and of nations, longs
To him and to his heirs; namely, the crown
And all wide-stretched honours that pertain
By custom and the ordinance of times
Unto the crown of France. That you may know
'T is no sinister nor no awkward claim,
Pick'd from the worm-holes of long-vanish'd days,
Nor from the dust of old oblivion rak'd,
He sends you this most memorable line,
In every branch truly demonstrative,
Willing you overlook this pedigree;
And when you find him evenly deriv'd
From his most fam'd of famous ancestors,
Edward the Third, he bids you then resign
Your crown and kingdom, indirectly held
From him the native and true challenger.

French King. Or else what follows?

Exeter. Bloody constraint; for if you hide the crown

Even in your hearts, there will he rake for it.
Therefore in fiery tempest is he coming,
In thunder and in earthquake, like a Jove,
That, if requiring fail, he will compel,
And bids you, in the bowels of the Lord,
Deliver up the crown, and to take mercy
On the poor souls for whom this hungry war
Opens his vasty jaws; and on your head
Turning the widows' tears, the orphans' cries,
The dead men's blood, the pining maidens' groans,
For husbands, fathers, and betrothed lovers,
That shall be swallow'd in this controversy.
This is his claim, his threatening, and my message;
Unless the Dauphin be in presence here,
To whom expressly I bring greeting too.

French King. For us, we will consider of this further.
To-morrow shall you bear our full intent
Back to our brother England.

Dauphin. For the Dauphin,
I stand here for him; what to him from England?

Exeter. Scorn and defiance; slight regard, contempt,
And any thing that may not misbecome
The mighty sender, doth he prize you at.
Thus says my king; and if your father's highness
Do not, in grant of all demands at large,
Sweeten the bitter mock you sent his majesty,
He 'll call you to so hot an answer of it
That caves and womby vaultages of France

Shall chide your trespass and return your mock
In second accent of his ordinance.

Dauphin. Say, if my father render fair return,
It is against my will, for I desire
Nothing but odds with England; to that end,
As matching to his youth and vanity,
I did present him with the Paris balls.

Exeter. He 'll make your Paris Louvre shake for it,
Were it the mistress court of mighty Europe;
And, be assur'd, you 'll find a difference,
As we his subjects have in wonder found,
Between the promise of his greener days
And these he masters now. Now he weighs time
Even to the utmost grain; that you shall read
In your own losses, if he stay in France.

French King. To-morrow shall you know our mind at full.

Exeter. Dispatch us with all speed, lest that our king
Come here himself to question our delay;
For he is footed in this land already.

French King. You shall be soon dispatch'd with fair conditions;
A night is but small breath and little pause
To answer matters of this consequence.

[*Flourish. Exeunt.*

THE ENGLISH FLEET

ACT III

PROLOGUE

Enter Chorus

Chorus. Thus with imagin'd wing our swift scene flies,
In motion of no less celerity
Than that of thought. Suppose that you have seen
The well-appointed king at Hampton pier
Embark his royalty, and his brave fleet
With silken streamers the young Phœbus fanning.
Play with your fancies, and in them behold

Upon the hempen tackle ship-boys climbing;
Hear the shrill whistle which doth order give
To sounds confus'd; behold the threaden sails,
Borne with the invisible and creeping wind,
Draw the huge bottoms through the furrow'd sea,
Breasting the lofty surge. O, do but think
You stand upon the rivage and behold
A city on the inconstant billows dancing;
For so appears this fleet majestical,
Holding due course to Harfleur. Follow, follow!
Grapple your minds to sternage of this navy,
And leave your England, as dead midnight still,
Guarded with grandsires, babies, and old women,
Either past or not arriv'd to pith and puissance;
For who is he, whose chin is but enrich'd
With one appearing hair, that will not follow
These cull'd and choice-drawn cavaliers to France?
Work, work your thoughts, and therein see a siege;
Behold the ordnance on their carriages,
With fatal mouths gaping on girded Harfleur.
Suppose the ambassador from the French comes back,
Tells Harry that the king doth offer him
Katherine his daughter, and with her, to dowry,
Some petty and unprofitable dukedoms.
The offer likes not; and the nimble gunner
With linstock now the devilish cannon touches,
[*Alarum, and chambers go off.*
And down goes all before them. Still be kind,
And eke out our performance with your mind. [*Exit.*

Scene I. *France. Before Harfleur*

Alarum. Enter King Henry, Exeter, Bedford, Gloucester, *and* Soldiers, *with scaling-ladders*

King Henry. Once more unto the breach, dear friends, once more,
Or close the wall up with our English dead!
In peace there 's nothing so becomes a man
As modest stillness and humility,
But when the blast of war blows in our ears,
Then imitate the action of the tiger;
Stiffen the sinews, summon up the blood,
Disguise fair nature with hard-favour'd rage;
Then lend the eye a terrible aspect;
Let it pry through the portage of the head
Like the brass cannon; let the brow o'erwhelm it
As fearfully as doth a galled rock
O'erhang and jutty his confounded base,
Swill'd with the wild and wasteful ocean.
Now set the teeth and stretch the nostril wide,
Hold hard the breath, and bend up every spirit
To his full height. On, on, you noble English,
Whose blood is fet from fathers of war proof,
Fathers that, like so many Alexanders,
Have in these parts from morn till even fought
And sheath'd their swords for lack of argument!
Dishonour not your mothers; now attest
That those whom you call'd fathers did beget you.
Be copy now to men of grosser blood,

And teach them how to war! — And you, good yeomen,
Whose limbs were made in England, show us here
The mettle of your pasture; let us swear
That you are worth your breeding, which I doubt not,
For there is none of you so mean and base
That hath not noble lustre in your eyes.
I see you stand like greyhounds in the slips,
Straining upon the start. The game 's afoot;
Follow your spirit, and upon this charge
Cry 'God for Harry, England, and Saint George!'
[*Exeunt. Alarum, and chambers go off.*

SCENE II. *The Same. Another Part of the Field*

Enter NYM, BARDOLPH, PISTOL, *and* Boy

Bardolph. On, on, on, on, on! to the breach, to the breach!

Nym. Pray thee, corporal, stay; the knocks are too hot, and, for mine own part, I have not a case of lives; the humour of it is too hot, that is the very plain-song of it.

Pistol. The plain-song is most just, for humours do abound.

'Knocks go and come, God's vassals drop and die;
And sword and shield,
In bloody field,
Doth win immortal fame.'

Boy. Would I were in an alehouse in London! I would give all my fame for a pot of ale and safety.

Pistol. And I;

'If wishes would prevail with me,
My purpose should not fail with me,
But thither would I hie.'

Boy. 'As duly, but not as truly,
As bird doth sing on bough.'

Enter FLUELLEN

Fluellen. Up to the preach, you dogs! avaunt, you cullions! [*Driving them forward.*

Pistol. Be merciful, great duke, to men of mould!
Abate thy rage, abate thy manly rage,
Abate thy rage, great duke!
Good bawcock, bate thy rage; use lenity, sweet chuck!

Nym. These be good humours! your honour wins bad humours. [*Exeunt all but Boy.*

Boy. As young as I am, I have observed these three swashers. I am boy to them all three; but all they three, though they would serve me, could not be man to me, for indeed three such antics do not amount to a man. For Bardolph, he is white-livered and red-faced; by the means whereof a' faces it out, but fights not. For Pistol, he hath a killing tongue and a quiet sword; by the means whereof a' breaks words, and keeps whole weapons. For Nym, he hath heard that men of few words are the best men, and therefore he scorns to say his prayers, lest a' should be thought a coward; but his few bad words are

matched with as few good deeds, for a' never broke any man's head but his own, and that was against a post when he was drunk. They will steal any thing, and call it purchase. Bardolph stole a lute-case, bore it twelve leagues, and sold it for three half-pence. Nym and Bardolph are sworn brothers in filching, and in Calais they stole a fire-shovel; I knew by that piece of service the men would carry coals. They would have me as familiar with men's pockets as their gloves or their handkerchers; which makes much against my manhood, if I should take from another's pocket to put into mine, for it is plain pocketing up of wrongs. I must leave them and seek some better service; their villany goes against my weak stomach, and therefore I must cast it up. [*Exit.*

Enter FLUELLEN, GOWER *following*

Gower. Captain Fluellen, you must come presently to the mines; the Duke of Gloucester would speak with you.

Fluellen. To the mines! tell you the duke, it is not so goot to come to the mines; for, look you, the mines is not according to the disciplines of the war. The concavities of it is not sufficient; for, look you, th' athversary, you may discuss unto the duke, look you, is digt himself four yard under the countermines. By Cheshu, I think a' will plow up all, if there is not petter directions.

Gower. The Duke of Gloucester, to whom the order of the siege is given, is altogether directed by an Irishman, a very valiant gentleman, i' faith.

Fluellen. It is Captain Macmorris, is it not?

Gower. I think it be.

Fluellen. By Cheshu, he is an ass, as in the world; I will verify as much in his peard. He has no more directions in the true disciplines of the wars, look you, of the Roman disciplines, than is a puppy-dog.

Enter MACMORRIS *and* Captain JAMY

Gower. Here a' comes; and the Scots captain, Captain Jamy with him.

Fluellen. Captain Jamy is a marvellous falorous gentleman, that is certain; and of great expedition and knowledge in th' aunchient wars, upon my particular knowledge of his directions. By Cheshu, he will maintain his argument as well as any military man in the world, in the disciplines of the pristine wars of the Romans.

Jamy. I say gud-day, Captain Fluellen.

Fluellen. God-den to your worship, goot Captain James.

Gower. How now, Captain Macmorris! have you quit the mines? have the pioners given o'er?

Macmorris. By Chrish, la! tish ill done; the work ish give over, the trumpet sound the retreat. By my hand, I swear, and my father's soul, the work ish ill done; it ish give over. I would have blowed up the

town, so Chrish save me, la! in an hour. O, tish ill done, tish ill done; by my hand, tish ill done!

Fluellen. Captain Macmorris, I peseech you now, will you voutsafe me, look you, a few disputations with you, as partly touching or concerning the disciplines of the war, the Roman wars, in the way of argument, look you, and friendly communication; partly to satisfy my opinion, and partly for the satisfaction, look you, of my mind, as touching the direction of the military discipline; that is the point.

Jamy. It sall be vary gud, gud feith, gud captains bath, and I sall quit you with gud leve, as I may pick occasion; that sall I, marry.

Macmorris. It is no time to discourse, so Chrish save me. The day is hot, and the weather, and the wars, and the king, and the dukes; it is no time to discourse. The town is beseeched, and the trumpet call us to the breach; and we talk, and, be Chrish, do nothing. 'T is shame for us all; so God sa' me, 't is shame to stand still; it is shame, by my hand. And there is throats to be cut, and works to be done; and there ish nothing done, so Chrish sa' me, la!

Jamy. By the mess, ere these eyes of mine take themselves to slomber, ay 'll do gud service, or ay 'll lig i' the grund for it; ay, or go to death; and ay 'll pay 't as valorously as I may, that sall I surely do, that is the breff and the long. Marry, I wad full fain hear some question 'tween you tway.

Fluellen. Captain Macmorris, I think, look you,

under your correction, there is not many of your nation —

Macmorris. Of my nation! What ish my nation? What ish my nation? Who talks of my nation ish a villain, and a bastard, and a knave, and a rascal.

Fluellen. Look you, if you take the matter otherwise than is meant, Captain Macmorris, peradventure I shall think you do not use me with that affability as in discretion you ought to use me, look you; peing as goot a man as yourself, poth in the disciplines of war, and in the derivation of my pirth, and in other particularities.

Macmorris. I do not know you so good a man as myself; so Chrish save me, I will cut off your head.

Gower. Gentlemen both, you will mistake each other.

Jamy. Au! that 's a foul fault. [*A parley sounded.*

Gower. The town sounds a parley.

Fluellen. Captain Macmorris, when there is more petter opportunity to pe required, look you, I will pe so pold as to tell you I know the disciplines of war; and there is an end. [*Exeunt.*

Scene III. *The Same. Before the Gates*

The Governor *and some* Citizens *on the walls; the English forces below. Enter* King Henry *and his train.*

King Henry. How yet resolves the governor of the town?

This is the latest parle we will admit.
Therefore to our best mercy give yourselves,
Or, like to men proud of destruction,
Defy us to our worst; for, as I am a soldier,
A name that in my thoughts becomes me best,
If I begin the battery once again,
I will not leave the half-achieved Harfleur
Till in her ashes she lie buried.
The gates of mercy shall be all shut up,
And the flesh'd soldier, rough and hard of heart,
In liberty of bloody hand shall range
With conscience wide as hell, mowing like grass
Your fresh-fair virgins and your flowering infants.
What is it then to me, if impious war,
Array'd in flames, like to the prince of fiends,
Do, with his smirch'd complexion, all fell feats
Enlink'd to waste and desolation?
What is 't to me, when you yourselves are cause,
If your pure maidens fall into the hand
Of hot and forcing violation?
What rein can hold licentious wickedness
When down the hill he holds his fierce career?
We may as bootless spend our vain command
Upon the enraged soldiers in their spoil
As send precepts to the leviathan
To come ashore. Therefore, you men of Harfleur,
Take pity of your town and of your people
Whiles yet my soldiers are in my command,
Whiles yet the cool and temperate wind of grace

O'erblows the filthy and contagious clouds
Of heady murther, spoil, and villany.
If not, why, in a moment look to see
The blind and bloody soldier with foul hand
Defile the locks of your shrill-shrieking daughters;
Your fathers taken by the silver beards,
And their most reverend heads dash'd to the walls;
Your naked infants spitted upon pikes,
Whiles the mad mothers with their howls confus'd
Do break the clouds, as did the wives of Jewry
At Herod's bloody-hunting slaughtermen.
What say you? will you yield, and this avoid,
Or, guilty in defence, be thus destroy'd?

Governor. Our expectation hath this day an end.
The Dauphin, whom of succours we entreated,
Returns us that his powers are yet not ready
To raise so great a siege. Therefore, great king,
We yield our town and lives to thy soft mercy.
Enter our gates; dispose of us and ours,
For we no longer are defensible.

King Henry. Open your gates.—Come, uncle Exeter,
Go you and enter Harfleur; there remain,
And fortify it strongly 'gainst the French.
Use mercy to them all. For us, dear uncle,
The winter coming on, and sickness growing
Upon our soldiers, we will retire to Calais.
To-night in Harfleur will we be your guest;
To-morrow for the march are we addrest.

[*Flourish. The King and his train enter the town.*

SCENE IV. *Rouen. A Room in the Palace*

Enter KATHERINE *and* ALICE

Katherine. Alice, tu as été en Angleterre, et tu parles bien le langage.

Alice. Un péu, madame.

Katherine. Je te prie, m' enseignez, il faut que j' apprenne à parler. Comment appelez-vous la main en Anglais?

Alice. La main? elle est appelée de hand.

Katherine. De hand. Et les doigts?

Alice. Les doigts? ma foi, j' oublie les doigts? mais je me souviendrai. Les doigts? je pense qu' ils sont appelés de fingres; oui, de fingres.

Katherine. La main, de hand; les doigts, de fingres. Je pense que je suis le bon écolier; j' ai gagné deux mots d'Anglais vîtement. Comment appelez-vous les ongles?

Alice. Les ongles? nous les appelons de nails.

Katherine. De nails. Écoutez; dites-moi, si je parle bien: de hand, de fingres, et de nails.

Alice. C'est bien dit, madame; il est fort bon Anglais.

Katherine. Dites-moi l' Anglais pour le bras.

Alice. De arm, madame.

Katherine. Et le coude?

Alice. De elbow.

Katherine. De elbow. Je m' en fais la répétition

de tous les mots que vous m' avez appris dès à présent.

Alice. Il est trop difficile, madame, comme je pense.

Katherine. Excusez-moi, Alice ; écoutez : de hand, de fingres, de nails, de arm, de bilbow.

Alice. De elbow, madame.

Katherine. O Seigneur Dieu, je m' en oublie ! de elbow. Comment appelez-vous le col ?

Alice. De neck, madame.

Katherine. De nick. Et le menton ?

Alice. De chin.

Katherine. De sin. Le col, de nick ; de menton, de sin.

Alice. Oui. Sauf votre honneur, en vérité, vous prononcez les mots aussi droit que les natifs d' Angleterre.

Katherine. Je ne doute point d' apprendre, par la grace de Dieu, et en peu de temps.

Alice. N' avez vous pas déjà oublié ce que je vous ai enseigné ?

Katherine. Non, je reciterai à vous promptement : de hand, de fingres, de mails, —

Alice. De nails, madame.

Katherine. De nails, de arm, de ilbow.

Alice. Sauf votre honneur, de elbow.

Katherine. Ainsi dis-je ; de elbow, de nick, et de sin. Comment appelez-vous le pied et la robe ?

Alice. De foot, madame ; et de coun.

Katherine. De foot et de coun! O Seigneur Dieu! ce sont mots de son mauvais, corruptible, gros, et impudique, et non pour les dames d' honneur d' user; je ne voudrais prononcer ces mots devant les seigneurs de France pour tout le monde. Foh! le foot et le coun! Néanmoins, je reciterai une autre fois ma leçon ensemble: de hand, de fingres, de nails, de arm, de elbow, de nick, de sin, de foot, de coun.

Alice. Excellent, madame!

Katherine. C' est assez pour une fois; allons-nous à dîner. [*Exeunt.*

Scene V. *The Same*

Enter the King of France, *the* Dauphin, *the* Duke of Bourbon, *the* Constable of France, *and others*

French King. 'T is certain he hath pass'd the river Somme.

Constable. And if he be not fought withal, my lord,
Let us not live in France; let us quit all,
And give our vineyards to a barbarous people.

Dauphin. O Dieu vivant! shall a few sprays of us,
The emptying of our fathers' luxury,
Our scions, put in wild and savage stock,
Spirt up so suddenly into the clouds,
And overlook their grafters?

Bourbon. Normans, but bastard Normans, Norman bastards!

Mort de ma vie! if they march along
Unfought withal, but I will sell my dukedom,
To buy a slobbery and a dirty farm
In that nook-shotten isle of Albion.

Constable. Dieu de batailles! where have they this mettle?
Is not their climate foggy, raw, and dull,
On whom, as in despite, the sun looks pale,
Killing their fruit with frowns? Can sodden water,
A drench for sur-rein'd jades, their barley broth,
Decoct their cold blood to such valiant heat?
And shall our quick blood, spirited with wine,
Seem frosty? O, for honour of our land,
Let us not hang like roping icicles
Upon our houses' thatch, whiles a more frosty people
Sweat drops of gallant youth in our rich fields!
Poor we may call them in their native lords.

Dauphin. By faith and honour,
Our madams mock at us, and plainly say
Our mettle is bred out.

Bourbon. They bid us to the English dancing-schools,
And teach lavoltas high and swift corantos,
Saying our grace is only in our heels,
And that we are most lofty runaways.

French King. Where is Montjoy the herald? speed him hence;
Let him greet England with our sharp defiance. —
Up, princes! and, with spirit of honour edg'd

More sharper than your swords, hie to the field. —
Charles Delabreth, high constable of France;
You Dukes of Orleans, Bourbon, and of Berri,
Alençon, Brabant, Bar, and Burgundy;
Jaques Chatillon, Rambures, Vaudemont,
Beaumont, Grandpré, Roussi, and Fauconberg,
Foix, Lestrale, Bouciqualt, and Charolois;
High dukes, great princes, barons, lords, and knights,
For your great seats now quit you of great shames.
Bar Harry England, that sweeps through our land
With pennons painted in the blood of Harfleur.
Rush on his host, as doth the melted snow
Upon the valleys whose low vassal seat
The Alps doth spit and void his rheum upon.
Go down upon him, — you have power enough, —
And in a captive chariot into Rouen
Bring him our prisoner.

Constable. This becomes the great.
Sorry am I his numbers are so few,
His soldiers sick and famish'd in their march,
For I am sure, when he shall see our army,
He 'll drop his heart into the sink of fear,
And for achievement offer us his ransom.

French King. Therefore, lord constable, haste on Montjoy,
And let him say to England that we send
To know what willing ransom he will give. —
Prince Dauphin, you shall stay with us in Rouen.

Dauphin. Not so, I do beseech your majesty.

French King. Be patient, for you shall remain with us. —
Now forth, lord constable and princes all,
And quickly bring us word of England's fall. [*Exeunt.*

Scene VI. *The English Camp in Picardy*

Enter Gower *and* Fluellen, *meeting*

Gower. How now, Captain Fluellen! come you from the bridge?

Fluellen. I assure you, there is very excellent services committed at the pridge.

Gower. Is the Duke of Exeter safe?

Fluellen. The Duke of Exeter is as magnanimous as Agamemnon, and a man that I love and honour with my soul, and my heart, and my duty, and my life, and my living, and my uttermost power; he is not — Got pe praised and plessed! — any hurt in the world, but keeps the pridge most valiantly, with excellent discipline. There is an aunchient there at the pridge, I think in my very conscience he is as valiant a man as Mark Antony; and he is a man of no estimation in the world, but I did see him do as gallant service.

Gower. What do you call him?

Fluellen. He is called Aunchient Pistol.

Gower. I know him not.

Enter Pistol

Fluellen. Here is the man.

Pistol. Captain, I thee beseech to do me favours; The Duke of Exeter doth love thee well.

Fluellen. Ay, I praise Got; and I have merited some love at his hands.

Pistol. Bardolph, a soldier, firm and sound of heart,
And of buxom valour, hath, by cruel fate,
And giddy Fortune's furious fickle wheel,
That goddess blind,
That stands upon the rolling restless stone —

Fluellen. Py your patience, Aunchient Pistol. Fortune is painted plind, with a muffler afore her eyes, to signify to you that Fortune is plind; and she is painted also with a wheel, to signify to you, which is the moral of it, that she is turning, and inconstant, and mutability, and variation; and her foot, look you, is fixed upon a spherical stone, which rolls, and rolls, and rolls. In good truth, the poet makes a most excellent description of it; Fortune is an excellent moral.

Pistol. Fortune is Bardolph's foe, and frowns on him; For he hath stolen a pax, and hanged must a' be.
A damned death!
Let gallows gape for dog, let man go free
And let not hemp his windpipe suffocate;
But Exeter hath given the doom of death
For pax of little price.
Therefore, go speak, the duke will hear thy voice;

And let not Bardolph's vital thread be cut
With edge of penny cord and vile reproach.
Speak, captain, for his life, and I will thee requite.

Fluellen. Aunchient Pistol, I do partly understand your meaning.

Pistol. Why then, rejoice therefore.

Fluellen. Certainly, aunchient, it is not a thing to rejoice at; for if, look you, he were my prother, I would desire the duke to use his goot pleasure, and put him to execution, for discipline ought to pe used.

Pistol. Die and be damn'd! and figo for thy friendship!

Fluellen. It is well.

Pistol. The fig of Spain! [*Exit.*

Fluellen. Very goot.

Gower. Why, this is an arrant counterfeit rascal; I remember him now, a bawd, a cutpurse.

Fluellen. I 'll assure you, a' uttered as prave words at the pridge as you shall see in a summer's day. But it is very well; what he has spoke to me, that is well, I warrant you, when time is serve.

Gower. Why, 't is a gull, a fool, a rogue, that now and then goes to the wars, to grace himself at his return into London under the form of a soldier. And such fellows are perfect in the great commanders' names; and they will learn you by rote where services were done; at such and such a sconce, at such a breach, at such a convoy; who

came off bravely, who was shot, who disgraced, what terms the enemy stood on; and this they con perfectly in the phrase of war, which they trick up with new-tuned oaths; and what a beard of the general's cut and a horrid suit of the camp will do among foaming bottles and ale-washed wits, is wonderful to be thought on. But you must learn to know such slanders of the age, or else you may be marvellously mistook.

Fluellen. I tell you what, Captain Gower; I do perceive he is not the man that he would gladly make show to the world he is. If I find a hole in his coat, I will tell him my mind. [*Drum heard.*] Hark you, the king is coming, and I must speak with him from the pridge. —

Drum and colours. Enter KING HENRY, GLOUCESTER, *and* Soldiers

Got pless your majesty!

King Henry. How now, Fluellen! camest thou from the bridge?

Fluellen. Ay, so please your majesty. The Duke of Exeter has very gallantly maintained the pridge. The French is gone off, look you, and there is gallant and most prave passages; marry, th' athversary was have possession of the pridge, but he is enforced to retire, and the Duke of Exeter is master of the pridge. I can tell your majesty, the duke is a prave man.

King Henry. What men have you lost, Fluellen?

Fluellen. The perdition of th' athversary hath peen very great, reasonable great. Marry, for my part, I think the duke hath lost never a man, but one that is like to pe executed for robbing a church, one Bardolph, if your majesty know the man. His face is all bubukles, and whelks, and knobs, and flames o' fire; and his lips plows at his nose, and it is like a coal of fire, sometimes plue and sometimes red; but his nose is executed, and his fire 's out.

King Henry. We would have all such offenders so cut off; and we give express charge that, in our marches through the country, there be nothing compelled from the villages, nothing taken but paid for, none of the French upbraided or abused in disdainful language; for when lenity and cruelty play for a kingdom, the gentler gamester is the soonest winner.

Tucket. Enter MONTJOY

Montjoy. You know me by my habit.

King Henry. Well then, I know thee; what shall I know of thee?

Montjoy. My master's mind.

King Henry. Unfold it.

Montjoy. Thus says my king: Say thou to Harry of England: Though we seemed dead, we did but sleep; advantage is a better soldier than rashness. Tell him we could have rebuked him at Harfleur, but that we thought not good to bruise an injury till

it were full ripe; now we speak upon our cue, and our voice is imperial. England shall repent his folly, see his weakness, and admire our sufferance. Bid him therefore consider of his ransom, which must proportion the losses we have borne, the subjects we have lost, the disgrace we have digested; which in weight to re-answer, his pettiness would bow under. For our losses, his exchequer is too poor; for the effusion of our blood, the muster of his kingdom too faint a number; and for our disgrace, his own person, kneeling at our feet, but a weak and worthless satisfaction. To this add defiance; and tell him, for conclusion, he hath betrayed his followers, whose condemnation is pronounced. So far my king and master; so much my office.

King Henry. What is thy name? I know thy quality.

Montjoy. Montjoy.

King Henry. Thou dost thy office fairly. Turn thee back,

And tell thy king I do not seek him now,
But could be willing to march on to Calais
Without impeachment; for, to say the sooth,
Though 't is no wisdom to confess so much
Unto an enemy of craft and vantage,
My people are with sickness much enfeebled,
My numbers lessen'd, and those few I have
Almost no better than so many French,
Who when they were in health, I tell thee, herald,

I thought upon one pair of English legs
Did march three Frenchmen. — Yet, forgive me, God,
That I do brag thus! — This your air of France
Hath blown that vice in me; I must repent.
Go therefore, tell thy master here I am.
My ransom is this frail and worthless trunk,
My army but a weak and sickly guard;
Yet, God before, tell him we will come on,
Though France himself and such another neighbor
Stand in our way. There 's for thy labour, Montjoy.
Go bid thy master well advise himself.
If we may pass, we will; if we be hinder'd,
We shall your tawny ground with your red blood
Discolour; and so, Montjoy, fare you well.
The sum of all our answer is but this:
We would not seek a battle, as we are,
Nor, as we are, we say we will not shun it;
So tell your master.

Montjoy. I shall deliver so. Thanks to your highness. [*Exit.*

Gloucester. I hope they will not come upon us now.

King Henry. We are in God's hand, brother, not in theirs.

March to the bridge; it now draws toward night.
Beyond the river we 'll encamp ourselves,
And on to-morrow bid them march away. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE VII. *The French Camp, near Agincourt*

Enter the CONSTABLE OF FRANCE, *the* LORD RAMBURES, ORLEANS, DAUPHIN, *with others*

Constable. Tut! I have the best armour of the world. Would it were day.

Orleans. You have an excellent armour; but let my horse have his due.

Constable. It is the best horse of Europe.

Orleans. Will it never be morning?

Dauphin. My Lord of Orleans, and my lord high constable, you talk of horse and armour?

Orleans. You are as well provided of both as any prince in the world.

Dauphin. What a long night is this! — I will not change my horse with any that treads but on four pasterns. Ça, ha! he bounds from the earth, as if his entrails were hairs; le cheval volant, the Pegasus, chez les narines de feu! When I bestride him, I soar, I am a hawk; he trots the air; the earth sings when he touches it; the basest horn of his hoof is more musical than the pipe of Hermes.

Orleans. He 's of the colour of the nutmeg.

Dauphin. And of the heat of the ginger. It is a beast for Perseus; he is pure air and fire, and the dull elements of earth and water never appear in him, but only in patient stillness while his rider mounts him. He is indeed a horse, and all other jades you may call beasts.

Constable. Indeed, my lord, it is a most absolute and excellent horse.

Dauphin. It is the prince of palfreys; his neigh is like the bidding of a monarch, and his countenance enforces homage.

Orleans. No more, cousin.

Dauphin. Nay, the man hath no wit that cannot, from the rising of the lark to the lodging of the lamb, vary deserved praise on my palfrey. It is a theme as fluent as the sea; turn the sands into eloquent tongues, and my horse is argument for them all. 'T is a subject for a sovereign to reason on, and for a sovereign's sovereign to ride on; and for the world, familiar to us and unknown, to lay apart their particular functions and wonder at him. I once writ a sonnet in his praise and began thus: 'Wonder of nature,'—

Orleans. I have heard a sonnet begin so to one's mistress.

Dauphin. Then did they imitate that which I composed to my courser, for my horse is my mistress.

Orleans. Your mistress bears well.

Dauphin. Me well; which is the prescript praise and perfection of a good and particular mistress.

Constable. Nay, for methought yesterday your mistress shrewdly shook your back. I had as lief have my mistress a jade.

Dauphin. I tell thee, constable, my mistress wears his own hair.

Constable. I could make as true a boast as that, if I had a sow to my mistress.

Dauphin. 'Le chien est retourné à son propre vomissement, et la truie lavée au bourbier;' thou makest use of any thing.

Constable. Yet do I not use my horse for my mistress, or any such proverb so little kin to the purpose.

Rambures. My lord constable, the armour that I saw in your tent to-night, are those stars or suns upon it?

Constable. Stars, my lord.

Dauphin. Some of them will fall to-morrow, I hope.

Constable. And yet my sky shall not want.

Dauphin. That may be, for you bear a many superfluously, and 't were more honour some were away.

Constable. Even as your horse bears your praises, who would trot as well, were some of your brags dismounted.

Dauphin. Would I were able to load him with his desert! — Will it never be day? I will trot to-morrow a mile, and my way shall be paved with English faces.

Constable. I will not say so, for fear I should be faced out of my way; but I would it were morning, for I would fain be about the ears of the English.

Rambures. Who will go to hazard with me for twenty prisoners?

Constable. You must first go yourself to hazard, ere you have them.

Dauphin. 'T is midnight; I 'll go arm myself. [*Exit.*

Orleans. The Dauphin longs for morning.

Rambures. He longs to eat the English.

Constable. I think he will eat all he kills.

Orleans. By the white hand of my lady, he 's a gallant prince.

Constable. Swear by her foot, that she may tread out the oath.

Orleans. He is simply the most active gentleman of France.

Constable. Doing is activity; and he will still be doing.

Orleans. He never did harm, that I heard of.

Constable. Nor will do none to-morrow; he will keep that good name still.

Orleans. I know him to be valiant.

Constable. I was told that by one that knows him better than you.

Orleans. What 's he?

Constable. Marry, he told me so himself; and he said he cared not who knew it.

Orleans. He needs not; it is no hidden virtue in him.

Constable. By my faith, sir, but it is; never any body saw it but his lackey. 'T is a hooded valour, and when it appears it will bate.

Orleans. Ill will never said well.

Constable. I will cap that proverb with 'There is flattery in friendship.'

Orleans. And I will take up that with 'Give the devil his due.'

Constable. Well placed. There stands your friend for the devil; have at the very eye of that proverb with 'A pox of the devil!'

Orleans. You are the better at proverbs, by how much 'A fool's bolt is soon shot.'

Constable. You have shot over.

Orleans. 'T is not the first time you were overshot.

Enter a Messenger

Messenger. My lord high constable, the English lie within fifteen hundred paces of your tents.

Constable. Who hath measured the ground?

Messenger. The Lord Grandpré.

Constable. A valiant and most expert gentleman. — Would it were day! — Alas, poor Harry of England! he longs not for the dawning as we do.

Orleans. What a wretched and peevish fellow is this king of England, to mope with his fat-brained followers so far out of his knowledge!

Constable. If the English had any apprehension, they would run away.

Orleans. That they lack; for if their heads had any intellectual armour, they could never wear such heavy head-pieces.

Rambures. That island of England breeds very valiant creatures; their mastiffs are of unmatchable courage.

Orleans. Foolish curs, that run winking into the mouth of a Russian bear and have their heads crushed like rotten apples! You may as well say, that 's a valiant flea that dare eat his breakfast on the lip of a lion.

Constable. Just, just; and the men do sympathize with the mastiffs in robustious and rough coming on, leaving their wits with their wives; and then give them great meals of beef and iron and steel, they will eat like wolves and fight like devils.

Orleans. Ay, but these English are shrewdly out of beef.

Constable. Then shall we find to-morrow they have only stomachs to eat, and none to fight. Now is it time to arm; come, shall we about it?

Orleans. It is now two o'clock; but, let me see, by ten
We shall have each a hundred Englishmen. [*Exeunt.*

HENRY V. BEING ARMED

ACT IV

PROLOGUE

Enter Chorus

Chorus. Now entertain conjecture of a time
When creeping murmur and the poring dark
Fills the wide vessel of the universe.
From camp to camp through the foul womb of night
The hum of either army stilly sounds,
That the fix'd sentinels almost receive
The secret whispers of each other's watch.
Fire answers fire, and through their paly flames
Each battle sees the other's umber'd face ;

Steed threatens steed, in high and boastful neighs
Piercing the night's dull ear; and from the tents
The armourers, accomplishing the knights,
With busy hammers closing rivets up,
Give dreadful note of preparation;
The country cocks do crow, the clocks do toll,
And the third hour of drowsy morning name.
Proud of their numbers and secure in soul,
The confident and over-lusty French
Do the low-rated English play at dice,
And chide the cripple tardy-gaited night,
Who, like a foul and ugly witch, doth limp
So tediously away. The poor condemned English,
Like sacrifices, by their watchful fires
Sit patiently, and inly ruminate
The morning's danger; and their gesture sad,
Investing lank-lean cheeks and war-worn coats,
Presenteth them unto the gazing moon
So many horrid ghosts. O now, who will behold
The royal captain of this ruin'd band
Walking from watch to watch, from tent to tent,
Let him cry 'Praise and glory on his head!'
For forth he goes and visits all his host,
Bids them good morrow with a modest smile,
And calls them brothers, friends, and countrymen.
Upon his royal face there is no note
How dread an army hath enrounded him;
Nor doth he dedicate one jot of colour
Unto the weary and all-watched night,

But freshly looks, and over-bears attaint
With cheerful semblance and sweet majesty;
That every wretch, pining and pale before,
Beholding him, plucks comfort from his looks.
A largess universal like the sun
His liberal eye doth give to every one,
Thawing cold fear. Then, mean and gentle all,
Behold, as may unworthiness define,
A little touch of Harry in the night.
And so our scene must to the battle fly;
Where — O for pity! — we shall much disgrace
With four or five most vile and ragged foils,
Right ill-dispos'd in brawl ridiculous,
The name of Agincourt. Yet sit and see,
Minding true things by what their mockeries be. [*Exit.*

Scene I. *The English Camp at Agincourt*

Enter King Henry, Bedford, *and* Gloucester

King Henry. Gloucester, 't is true that we are in great danger;
The greater therefore should our courage be. —
Good morrow, brother Bedford. — God Almighty!
There is some soul of goodness in things evil,
Would men observingly distil it out;
For our bad neighbour makes us early stirrers,
Which is both healthful and good husbandry.
Besides, they are our outward consciences,

And preachers to us all, admonishing
That we should dress us fairly for our end.
Thus may we gather honey from the weed,
And make a moral of the devil himself. —

Enter Erpingham

Good morrow, old Sir Thomas Erpingham.
A good soft pillow for that good white head
Were better than a churlish turf of France.

Erpingham. Not so, my liege; this lodging likes me better,
Since I may say, now lie I like a king.

King Henry. 'T is good for men to love their present pains
Upon example; so the spirit is eas'd,
And when the mind is quicken'd, out of doubt,
The organs, though defunct and dead before,
Break up their drowsy grave and newly move,
With casted slough and fresh legerity.
Lend me thy cloak, Sir Thomas. — Brothers both,
Commend me to the princes in our camp;
Do my good morrow to them, and anon
Desire them all to my pavilion.

Gloucester. We shall, my liege.

Erpingham. Shall I attend your grace?

King Henry. No, my good knight;
Go with my brothers to my lords of England.
I and my bosom must debate a while,
And then I would no other company.

Erpingham. The Lord in heaven bless thee, noble Harry! [*Exeunt all but King.*

King Henry. God-a-mercy, old heart! thou speak'st cheerfully.

Enter PISTOL

Pistol. Qui va là?

King Henry. A friend.

Pistol. Discuss unto me; art thou officer?
Or art thou base, common, and popular?

King Henry. I am a gentleman of a company.

Pistol. Trail'st thou the puissant pike?

King Henry. Even so. What are you?

Pistol. As good a gentleman as the emperor.

King Henry. Then you are a better than the king.

Pistol. The king 's a bawcock, and a heart of gold,
A lad of life, an imp of fame;
Of parents good, of fist most valiant.
I kiss his dirty shoe, and from heart-strings
I love the lovely bully. What is thy name?

King Henry. Harry le Roy.

Pistol. Le Roy! a Cornish name; art thou of Cornish crew?

King Henry. No, I am a Welshman.

Pistol. Know'st thou Fluellen?

King Henry. Yes.

Pistol. Tell him, I 'll knock his leek about his pate
Upon Saint Davy's day.

King Henry. Do not you wear your dagger in your cap that day, lest he knock that about yours.

Pistol. Art thou his friend?

King Henry. And his kinsman too.

Pistol. The figo for thee, then!

King Henry. I thank you; God be with you!

Pistol. My name is Pistol call'd. [*Exit.*

King Henry. It sorts well with your fierceness.

Enter FLUELLEN *and* GOWER

Gower. Captain Fluellen!

Fluellen. So! in the name of Cheshu Christ, speak lower. It is the greatest admiration in the universal world, when the true and aunchient prerogatifes and laws of the wars is not kept. If you would take the pains but to examine the wars of Pompey the Great, you shall find, I warrant you, that there is no tiddle taddle nor pibble pabble in Pompey's camp; I warrant you, you shall find the ceremonies of the wars, and the cares of it, and the forms of it, and the sobriety of it, and the modesty of it, to pe otherwise.

Gower. Why, the enemy is loud; you hear him all night.

Fluellen. If the enemy is an ass and a fool and a prating coxcomb, is it meet, think you, that we should also, look you, pe an ass and a fool and a prating coxcomb? in your own conscience, now?

Gower. I will speak lower.

Fluellen. I pray you and peseech you that you will.

[*Exeunt Gower and Fluellen.*

King Henry. Though it appear a little out of fashion,
There is much care and valour in this Welshman.

Enter Bates, Court, *and* Williams

Court. Brother John Bates, is not that the morning which breaks yonder?

Bates. I think it be; but we have no great cause to desire the approach of day.

Williams. We see yonder the beginning of the day, but I think we shall never see the end of it. — Who goes there?

King Henry. A friend.

Williams. Under what captain serve you?

King Henry. Under Sir Thomas Erpingham.

Williams. A good old commander and a most kind gentleman; I pray you, what thinks he of our estate?

King Henry. Even as men wracked upon a sand, that looked to be washed off the next tide.

Bates. He hath not told his thought to the king?

King Henry. No; nor it is not meet he should. For, though I speak it to you, I think the king is but a man, as I am; the violet smells to him as it doth to me; the element shows to him as it doth to me; all his senses have but human conditions. His ceremonies laid by, in his nakedness he appears but a man; and though his affections are higher mounted than ours,

yet, when they stoop they stoop with the like wing. Therefore when he sees reason of fears, as we do, his fears, out of doubt, be of the same relish as ours are; yet, in reason, no man should possess him with any appearance of fear, lest he, by showing it, should dishearten his army.

Bates. He may show what outward courage he will, but I believe, as cold a night as 't is, he could wish himself in Thames up to the neck: and so I would he were, and I by him, at all adventures, so we were quit here.

King Henry. By my troth, I will speak my conscience of the king; I think he would not wish himself any where but where he is.

Bates. Then I would he were here alone; so should he be sure to be ransomed, and a many poor men's lives saved.

King Henry. I dare say you love him not so ill to wish him here alone, howsoever you speak this to feel other men's minds. Methinks I could not die any where so contented as in the king's company, his cause being just and his quarrel honourable.

Williams. That 's more than we know.

Bates. Ay, or more than we should seek after; for we know enough if we know we are the king's subjects. If his cause be wrong, our obedience to the king wipes the crime of it out of us.

Williams. But if the cause be not good, the king himself hath a heavy reckoning to make, when all

those legs and arms and heads, chopped off in a battle, shall join together at the latter day and cry all 'We died at such a place;' some swearing, some crying for a surgeon, some upon their wives left poor behind them, some upon the debts they owe, some upon their children rawly left. I am afeared there are few die well that die in a battle; for how can they charitably dispose of anything when blood is their argument? Now, if these men do not die well, it will be a black matter for the king that led them to it, who to disobey were against all proportion of subjection.

King Henry. So, if a son that is by his father sent about merchandise do sinfully miscarry upon the sea, the imputation of his wickedness, by your rule, should be imposed upon his father that sent him; or if a servant, under his master's command transporting a sum of money, be assailed by robbers and die in many irreconciled iniquities, you may call the business of the master the author of the servant's damnation. But this is not so; the king is not bound to answer the particular endings of his soldiers, the father of his son, nor the master of his servant, for they purpose not their death when they purpose their services. Besides, there is no king, be his cause never so spotless, if it come to the arbitrement of swords, can try it out with all unspotted soldiers. Some peradventure have on them the guilt of premeditated and contrived murther; some, of beguil-

ing virgins with the broken seals of perjury; some, making the wars their bulwark, that have before gored the gentle bosom of peace with pillage and robbery. Now, if these men have defeated the law and outrun native punishment, though they can outstrip men, they have no wings to fly from God. War is His beadle, war is His vengeance; so that here men are punished for before-breach of the king's laws in now the king's quarrel. Where they feared the death they have borne life away, and where they would be safe they perish; then if they die unprovided, no more is the king guilty of their damnation than he was before guilty of those impieties for the which they are now visited. Every subject's duty is the king's, but every subject's soul is his own. Therefore should every soldier in the wars do as every sick man in his bed, wash every mote out of his conscience. And dying so, death is to him advantage; or not dying, the time was blessedly lost wherein such preparation was gained; and in him that escapes, it were not sin to think that, making God so free an offer, He let him outlive that day to see His greatness and to teach others how they should prepare.

Williams. 'Tis certain, every man that dies ill, the ill upon his own head; the king is not to answer it.

Bates. I do not desire he should answer for me; and yet I determine to fight lustily for him.

King Henry. I myself heard the king say he would not be ransomed.

Williams. Ay, he said so, to make us fight cheerfully; but when our throats are cut, he may be ransomed and we ne'er the wiser.

King Henry. If I live to see it, I will never trust his word after.

Williams. You pay him then! That 's a perilous shot out of an elder-gun that a poor and private displeasure can do against a monarch. You may as well go about to turn the sun to ice with fanning in his face with a peacock's feather. You 'll never trust his word after! come, 't is a foolish saying.

King Henry. Your reproof is something too round; I should be angry with you, if the time were convenient.

Williams. Let it be a quarrel between us, if you live.

King Henry. I embrace it.

Williams. How shall I know thee again?

King Henry. Give me any gage of thine, and I will wear it in my bonnet; then, if ever thou darest acknowledge it, I will make it my quarrel.

Williams. Here 's my glove; give me another of thine.

King Henry. There.

Williams. This will I also wear in my cap; if ever thou come to me and say, after to-morrow, 'This is my glove,' by this hand, I will take thee a box on the ear.

King Henry. If ever I live to see it, I will challenge it.

Williams. Thou darest as well be hanged.

King Henry. Well, I will do it, though I take thee in the king's company.

Williams. Keep thy word; fare thee well.

Bates. Be friends, you English fools, be friends; we have French quarrels enow, if you could tell how to reckon.

King Henry. Indeed, the French may lay twenty French crowns to one they will beat us, for they bear them on their shoulders: but it is no English treason to cut French crowns, and to-morrow the king himself will be a clipper. — [*Exeunt Soldiers.*

Upon the king! let us our lives, our souls,
Our debts, our careful wives,
Our children, and our sins lay on the king!
We must bear all. O hard condition,
Twin-born with greatness, subject to the breath
Of every fool whose sense no more can feel
But his own wringing! What infinite heart's-ease
Must kings neglect that private men enjoy!
And what have kings that privates have not too,
Save ceremony, save general ceremony?
And what art thou, thou idol ceremony?
What kind of god art thou, that suffer'st more
Of mortal griefs than do thy worshippers?
What are thy rents? what are thy comings-in?
O ceremony, show me but thy worth!

What is thy soul of adoration?
Art thou aught else but place, degree, and form,
Creating awe and fear in other men?
Wherein thou art less happy being fear'd
Than they in fearing.
What drink'st thou oft, instead of homage sweet,
But poison'd flattery? O, be sick, great greatness,
And bid thy ceremony give thee cure!
Think'st thou the fiery fever will go out
With titles blown from adulation?
Will it give place to flexure and low bending?
Canst thou, when thou command'st the beggar's knee,
Command the health of it? No, thou proud dream,
That play'st so subtly with a king's repose;
I am a king that find thee, and I know
'T is not the balm, the sceptre, and the ball,
The sword, the mace, the crown imperial,
The intertissued robe of gold and pearl,
The farced title running fore the king,
The throne he sits on, nor the tide of pomp
That beats upon the high shore of this world,
No, not all these, thrice-gorgeous ceremony,
Not all these, laid in bed majestical,
Can sleep so soundly as the wretched slave,
Who with a body fill'd and vacant mind
Gets him to rest, cramm'd with distressful bread,
Never sees horrid night, the child of hell,
But, like a lackey, from the rise to set
Sweats in the eye of Phœbus, and all night

Sleeps in Elysium ; next day after dawn,
Doth rise and help Hyperion to his horse,
And follows so the ever-running year,
With profitable labour, to his grave.
And, but for ceremony, such a wretch,
Winding up days with toil and nights with sleep,
Had the fore-hand and vantage of a king.
The slave, a member of the country's peace,
Enjoys it, but in gross brain little wots
What watch the king keeps to maintain the peace,
Whose hours the peasant best advantages.

Enter ERPINGHAM

Erpingham. My lord, your nobles, jealous of your absence,
Seek through your camp to find you.
King Henry. Good old knight,
Collect them all together at my tent ;
I 'll be before thee.
Erpingham. I shall do 't, my lord. [*Exit.*
King Henry. O God of battles steel my soldiers' hearts ;
Possess them not with fear ; take from them now
The sense of reckoning, if the opposed numbers
Pluck their hearts from them. Not to-day, O Lord,
O, not to-day, think not upon the fault
My father made in compassing the crown !
I Richard's body have interred new,
And on it have bestow'd more contrite tears

Than from it issued forced drops of blood.
Five hundred poor I have in yearly pay,
Who twice a-day their wither'd hands hold up
Toward heaven, to pardon blood; and I have built
Two chantries, where the sad and solemn priests
Sing still for Richard's soul. More will I do;
Though all that I can do is nothing worth,
Since that my penitence comes after all,
Imploring pardon.

Enter GLOUCESTER

Gloucester. My liege!

King Henry. My brother Gloucester's voice? Ay;
I know thy errand, I will go with thee.
The day, my friends, and all things stay for me.

[*Exeunt.*

SCENE II. *The French Camp*

Enter the DAUPHIN, ORLEANS, RAMBURES, *and others*

Orleans. The sun doth gild our armour; up, my lords!

Dauphin. Montez à cheval!—My horse! varlet! laquais! ha!

Orleans. O brave spirit!

Dauphin. Via! les eaux et la terre.

Orleans. Rien puis? l' air et le feu.

Dauphin. Ciel, cousin Orleans.—

Enter Constable

Now, my lord constable!

Constable. Hark, how our steeds for present service neigh!

Dauphin. Mount them, and make incision in their hides,

That their hot blood may spin in English eyes,
And dout them with superfluous courage, ha!

Rambures. What, will you have them weep our horses' blood?
How shall we then behold their natural tears?

Enter Messenger

Messenger. The English are embattled, you French peers.

Constable. To horse, you gallant princes! straight to horse!

Do but behold yon poor and starved band,
And your fair show shall suck away their souls,
Leaving them but the shales and husks of men.
There is not work enough for all our hands,
Scarce blood enough in all their sickly veins
To give each naked curtle-axe a stain
That our French gallants shall to-day draw out
And sheathe for lack of sport; let us but blow on them,
The vapour of our valour will o'erturn them.
'Tis positive 'gainst all exceptions, lords,
That our superfluous lackeys and our peasants,

Who in unnecessary action swarm
About our squares of battle, were enow
To purge this field of such a hilding foe,
Though we upon this mountain's basis by
Took stand for idle speculation;
But that our honours must not. What 's to say?
A very little little let us do,
And all is done. Then let the trumpets sound
The tucket sonance and the note to mount;
For our approach shall so much dare the field
That England shall couch down in fear and yield.

Enter GRANDPRÉ

Grandpré. Why do you stay so long, my lords of France?
Yon island carrions, desperate of their bones,
Ill-favouredly become the morning field.
Their ragged curtains poorly are let loose,
And our air shakes them passing scornfully;
Big Mars seems bankrupt in their beggar'd host,
And faintly through a rusty beaver peeps;
The horsemen sit like fixed candlesticks,
With torch-staves in their hand; and their poor jades
Lob down their heads, dropping the hides and hips,
The gum down-roping from their pale-dead eyes,
And in their pale dull mouths the gimmal bit
Lies foul with chew'd grass, still and motionless;
And their executors, the knavish crows,
Fly o'er them, all impatient for their hour.

Description cannot suit itself in words
To demonstrate the life of such a battle,
In life so lifeless as it shows itself.

Constable. They have said their prayers, and they stay for death.

Dauphin. Shall we go send them dinners and fresh suits,
And give their fasting horses provender,
And after fight with them?

Constable. I stay but for my guidon; to the field! 60
I will the banner from a trumpet take,
And use it for my haste. Come, come, away!
The sun is high, and we outwear the day. [*Exeunt.*

Scene III. *The English Camp*

Enter the English Host; Gloucester, Bedford, Exeter, Erpingham, Salisbury, *and* Westmoreland

Gloucester. Where is the king?

Bedford. The king himself is rode to view their battle.

Westmoreland. Of fighting men they have full three-score thousand.

Exeter. There 's five to one; besides, they all are fresh.

Salisbury. God's arm strike with us! 't is a fearful odds.
God be wi' you, princes all; I 'll to my charge.
If we no more meet till we meet in heaven,

Then, joyfully, my noble Lord of Bedford,
My dear Lord Gloucester, and my good Lord Exeter,
And my kind kinsman, warriors all, adieu!

Bedford. Farewell, good Salisbury; and good luck go with thee!

Exeter. Farewell, kind lord, fight valiantly to-day:
And yet I do thee wrong to mind thee of it,
For thou art fram'd of the firm truth of valour.

[*Exit* SALISBURY.

Bedford. He is as full of valour as of kindness,
Princely in both.

Enter the KING

Westmoreland. O that we now had here
But one ten thousand of those men in England
That do no work to-day!

King Henry. What 's he that wishes so?
My cousin Westmoreland? No, my fair cousin.
If we are mark'd to die, we are enow
To do our country loss; and if to live,
The fewer men, the greater share of honour.
God's will! I pray thee, wish not one man more.
By Jove, I am not covetous for gold,
Nor care I who doth feed upon my cost;
It yearns me not if men my garments wear;
Such outward things dwell not in my desires;
But if it be a sin to covet honour,
I am the most offending soul alive.
No, faith, my coz, wish not a man from England.
God's peace! I would not lose so great an honour

As one man more, methinks, would share from me
For the best hope I have. O, do not wish one more!
Rather proclaim it, Westmoreland, through my host,
That he which hath no stomach to this fight,
Let him depart; his passport shall be made,
And crowns for convoy put into his purse.
We would not die in that man's company
That fears his fellowship to die with us.
This day is call'd the feast of Crispian:
He that outlives this day, and comes safe home,
Will stand a tip-toe when this day is nam'd,
And rouse him at the name of Crispian.
He that shall live this day, and see old age,
Will yearly on the vigil feast his neighbours,
And say 'To-morrow is Saint Crispian.'
Then will he strip his sleeve and show his scars,
And say 'These wounds I had on Crispin's day.'
Old men forget; yet all shall be forgot
But he 'll remember with advantages
What feats he did that day. Then shall our names,
Familiar in his mouth as household words, —
Harry the king, Bedford and Exeter,
Warwick and Talbot, Salisbury and Gloucester, —
Be in their flowing cups freshly remember'd.
This story shall the good man teach his son,
And Crispin Crispian shall ne'er go by,
From this day to the ending of the world,
But we in it shall be remembered,
We few, we happy few, we band of brothers.

For he to-day that sheds his blood with me
Shall be my brother; be he ne'er so vile,
This day shall gentle his condition;
And gentlemen in England now a-bed
Shall think themselves accurs'd they were not here,
And hold their manhoods cheap whiles any speaks
That fought with us upon Saint Crispin's day.

Enter SALISBURY

Salisbury. My sovereign lord, bestow yourself with speed;
The French are bravely in their battles set,
And will with all expedience charge on us.

King Henry. All things are ready, if our minds be so.

Westmoreland. Perish the man whose mind is backward now!

King Henry. Thou dost not wish more help from England, coz?

Westmoreland. God's will! my liege, would you and I alone,
Without more help, could fight this royal battle!

King Henry. Why, now thou hast unwish'd five thousand men,
Which likes me better than to wish us one. —
You know your places; God be with you all!

Tucket. Enter MONTJOY

Montjoy. Once more I come to know of thee, King Harry,

If for thy ransom thou wilt now compound,
Before thy most assured overthrow;
For certainly thou art so near the gulf
Thou needs must be englutted. Besides, in mercy,
The constable desires thee thou wilt mind
Thy followers of repentance; that their souls
May make a peaceful and a sweet retire
From off these fields where, wretches, their poor bodies
Must lie and fester.

King Henry. Who hath sent thee now?

Montjoy. The Constable of France.

King Henry. I pray thee, bear my former answer back:

Bid them achieve me, and then sell my bones.
Good God! why should they mock poor fellows thus?
The man that once did sell the lion's skin
While the beast liv'd was kill'd with hunting him.
A many of our bodies shall no doubt
Find native graves, upon the which, I trust,
Shall witness live in brass of this day's work;
And those that leave their valiant bones in France,
Dying like men, though buried in your dunghills,
They shall be fam'd, for there the sun shall greet them
And draw their honours reeking up to heaven,
Leaving their earthly parts to choke your clime,
The smell whereof shall breed a plague in France.
Mark then abounding valour in our English,
That, being dead, like to the bullet's grazing,

Break out into a second course of mischief,
Killing in relapse of mortality.
Let me speak proudly: tell the constable
We are but warriors for the working-day;
Our gayness and our gilt are all besmirch'd
With rainy marching in the painful field;
There 's not a piece of feather in our host —
Good argument, I hope, we will not fly —
And time hath worn us into slovenry;
But, by the mass, our hearts are in the trim,
And my poor soldiers tell me, yet ere night
They 'll be in fresher robes, or they will pluck
The gay new coats o'er the French soldiers' heads
And turn them out of service. If they do this, —
As, if God please, they shall, — my ransom then
Will soon be levied. Herald, save thou thy labour;
Come thou no more for ransom, gentle herald.
They shall have none, I swear, but these my joints,
Which if they have as I will leave 'em them
Shall yield them little, tell the constable.

Montjoy. I shall, King Harry. And so fare thee well;
Thou never shalt hear herald any more. [*Exit*

King Henry. I fear thou 'lt once more come again for ransom.

Enter York

York. My lord, most humbly on my knee I beg
The leading of the vaward.

King Henry. Take it, brave York. — Now, soldiers, march away. —
And how Thou pleasest, God, dispose the day! [*Exeunt.*

Scene IV. *The Field of Battle*

Alarum. Excursions. Enter French Soldier, Pistol, *and* Boy

Pistol. Yield, cur!

French Soldier. Je pense que vous êtes gentilhomme de bonne qualité.

Pistol. Quality! Callino, castore me! Art thou a gentleman? what is thy name? discuss.

French Soldier. O Seigneur Dieu!

Pistol. O, Signieur Dew should be a gentleman. —
Perpend my words, O Signieur Dew, and mark;
O Signieur Dew, thou diest on point of fox,
Except, O signieur, thou do give to me
Egregious ransom.

French Soldier. O, prenez miséricorde! ayez pitié de moi!

Pistol. Moy shall not serve, I will have forty moys,
Or I will fetch thy rim out at thy throat
In drops of crimson blood.

French Soldier. Est-il impossible d'échapper la force de ton bras?

Pistol. Brass, cur!
Thou damned and luxurious mountain goat,
Offer'st me brass?

French Soldier. O, pardonnez moi!

Pistol. Say'st thou me so? is that a ton of moys? —
Come hither, boy: ask me this slave in French
What is his name.

Boy. Ecoutez: comment êtes-vous appelé?

French Soldier. Monsieur le Fer.

Boy. He says his name is Master Fer.

Pistol. Master Fer! I 'll fer him, and firk him, and ferret him; discuss the same in French unto him.

Boy. I do not know the French for fer, and ferret, and firk.

Pistol. Bid him prepare; for I will cut his throat.

French Soldier. Que dit-il, monsieur?

Boy. Il me commande de vous dire que vous faites vous prêt; car ce soldat ici est disposé tout à cette heure de couper votre gorge.

Pistol. Owy, cuppele gorge, permafoy,
Peasant, unless thou give me crowns, brave crowns;
Or mangled shalt thou be by this my sword.

French Soldier. O, je vous supplie, pour l'amour de Dieu, me pardonner! Je suis gentilhomme de bonne maison; gardez ma vie, et je vous donnerai deux cents écus.

Pistol. What are his words?

Boy. He prays you to save his life; he is a gentleman of a good house, and for his ransom he will give you two hundred crowns.

Pistol. Tell him my fury shall abate, and I
The crowns will take.

French Soldier. Petit monsieur, que dit-il?

Boy. Encore qu'il est contre son jurement de pardonner aucun prisonnier, néanmoins, pour les écus que vous l'avez promis, il est content de vous donner la liberté, le franchisement.

French Soldier. Sur mes genoux je vous donne mille remercîmens; et je m'estime heureux que je suis tombé entre les mains d'un chevalier, je pense, le plus brave, vaillant, et très distingué seigneur d'Angleterre.

Pistol. Expound unto me, boy.

Boy. He gives you, upon his knees, a thousand thanks, and he esteems himself happy that he hath fallen into the hands of one, as he thinks, the most brave, valorous, and thrice-worthy signieur of England.

Pistol. As I suck blood, I will some mercy show. — Follow me!

Boy. Suivez-vous le grand capitaine. — [*Exeunt Pistol and French Soldier.*] I did never know so full a voice issue from so empty a heart; but the saying is true, 'The empty vessel makes the greatest sound.' Bardolph and Nym had ten times more valour than this roaring devil i' the old play, that every one may pare his nails with a wooden dagger; and they are both hanged; and so would this be, if he durst steal any thing adventurously. I must stay with the lackeys, with the luggage of our camp; the French might have a good prey of us, if he knew of it, for there is none to guard it but boys. [*Exit.*

Scene V. *Another Part of the Field*

Enter Orleans, Bourbon, Dauphin, Constable, *and* Rambures

Constable. O diable!

Orleans. O Seigneur! le jour est perdu, tout est perdu!

Dauphin. Mort de ma vie! all is confounded, all!
Reproach and everlasting shame
Sits mocking in our plumes. O méchante fortune!
Do not run away. [*A short alarum.*

Constable. Why, all our ranks are broke.

Dauphin. O perdurable shame! let 's stab ourselves.
Be these the wretches that we play'd at dice for?

Orleans. Is this the king we sent to for his ransom?

Bourbon. Shame and eternal shame, nothing but shame!
Let us die in honour; once more back again!

Constable. Disorder, that hath spoil'd us, friend us now!
Let us on heaps go offer up our lives.

Orleans. We are enow yet living in the field
To smother up the English in our throngs,
If any order might be thought upon.

Bourbon. The devil take order now! I 'll to the throng.
Let life be short, else shame will be too long.
[*Exeunt.*

SCENE VI. *Another Part of the Field*

Alarums. Enter KING HENRY *and forces*, EXETER, *and others*

King Henry. Well have we done, thrice valiant countrymen,
But all 's not done; yet keep the French the field.

Exeter. The Duke of York commends him to your majesty.

King Henry. Lives he, good uncle? thrice within this hour
I saw him down, thrice up again, and fighting:
From helmet to the spur all blood he was.

Exeter. In which array, brave soldier, doth he lie,
Larding the plain; and by his bloody side,
Yoke-fellow to his honour-owing wounds,
The noble Earl of Suffolk also lies.
Suffolk first died; and York, all haggled over,
Comes to him, where in gore he lay insteep'd,
And takes him by the beard, kisses the gashes
That bloodily did yawn upon his face,
And cries aloud, 'Tarry, dear cousin Suffolk!
My soul shall thine keep company to heaven;
Tarry, sweet soul, for mine, then fly abreast,
As in this glorious and well-foughten field
We kept together in our chivalry!'
Upon these words I came and cheer'd him up;
He smil'd me in the face, raught me his hand,
And, with a feeble gripe, says 'Dear my lord,

Commend my service to my sovereign.'
So did he turn, and over Suffolk's neck
He threw his wounded arm and kiss'd his lips;
And so espous'd to death, with blood he seal'd
A testament of noble-ending love.
The pretty and sweet manner of it forc'd
Those waters from me which I would have stopp'd;
But I had not so much of man in me,
And all my mother came into mine eyes
And gave me up to tears.

King Henry. I blame you not;
For, hearing this, I must perforce compound
With mistful eyes, or they will issue too. — [*Alarum.*
But, hark! what new alarum is this same?
The French have reinforc'd their scatter'd men.—
Then every soldier kill his prisoners;
Give the word through. [*Exeunt.*

Scene VII. *Another Part of the Field*

Enter Fluellen *and* Gower

Fluellen. Kill the poys and the luggage! 't is expressly against the law of arms. 'T is as arrant a piece of knavery, mark you now, as can pe offert; in your conscience, now, is it not?

Gower. 'T is certain there 's not a boy left alive; and the cowardly rascals that ran from the battle ha' done this slaughter. Besides, they have burned and carried away all that was in the king's tent; where-

fore the king, most worthily, hath caused every soldier to cut his prisoner's throat. O, 't is a gallant king!

Fluellen. Ay, he was porn at Monmouth, Captain Gower. What call you the town's name where Alexander the Pig was porn?

Gower. Alexander the Great.

Fluellen. Why, I pray you, is not pig great? the pig, or the great, or the mighty, or the huge, or the magnanimous, are all one reckonings, save the phrase is a little variations.

Gower. I think Alexander the Great was born in Macedon; his father was called Philip of Macedon, as I take it.

Fluellen. I think it is in Macedon where Alexander is porn. I tell you, captain, if you look in the maps of the world, I warrant you sall find, in the comparisons petween Macedon and Monmouth, that the situations, look you, is poth alike. There is a river in Macedon, and there is also moreover a river at Monmouth. It is called Wye at Monmouth, but it is out of my prains what is the name of the other river, but 't is all one, 't is alike as my fingers is to my fingers, and there is salmons in poth. If you mark Alexander's life well, Harry of Monmouth's life is come after it indifferent well; for there is figures in all things. Alexander, Got knows, and you know, in his rages, and his furies, and his wraths, and his cholers, and his moods, and his displeasures, and his indigna-

tions, and also peing a little intoxicates in his prains, did, in his ales and his angers, look you, kill his pest friend, Cleitus.

Gower. Our king is not like him in that; he never killed any of his friends.

Fluellen. It is not well done, mark you now, to take the tales out of my mouth, ere it is made and finished. I speak but in the figures and comparisons of it: as Alexander killed his friend Cleitus, peing in his ales and his cups, so also Harry Monmouth, peing in his right wits and his goot judgments, turned away the fat knight with the great-pelly doublet. He was full of jests, and gipes, and knaveries, and mocks; I have forgot his name.

Gower. Sir John Falstaff.

Fluellen. That is he. I 'll tell you there is goot men porn at Monmouth.

Gower. Here comes his majesty.

Alarum. Enter KING HENRY, *with* BOURBON and Prisoners; WARWICK, GLOUCESTER, EXETER, *and others*

King Henry. I was not angry since I came to France
Until this instant. — Take a trumpet, herald;
Ride thou unto the horsemen on yon hill.
If they will fight with us, bid them come down,
Or void the field; they do offend our sight.
If they 'll do neither, we will come to them,
And make them skirr away as swift as stones

Enforced from the old Assyrian slings.
Besides, we 'll cut the throats of those we have,
And not a man of them that we shall take
Shall taste our mercy. Go and tell them so.

Enter MONTJOY

Exeter. Here comes the herald of the French, my liege.

Gloucester. His eyes are humbler than they us'd to be.

King Henry. How now! what means this, herald? know'st thou not
That I have fin'd these bones of mine for ransom? 70
Com'st thou again for ransom?

Montjoy. No, great king;
I come to thee for charitable license
That we may wander o'er this bloody field
To look our dead, and then to bury them;
To sort our nobles from our common men,
For many of our princes — woe the while! —
Lie drown'd and soak'd in mercenary blood;
So do our vulgar drench their peasant limbs
In blood of princes; and their wounded steeds
Fret fetlock deep in gore, and with wild rage 80
Yerk out their armed heels at their dead masters,
Killing them twice. O, give us leave, great king,
To view the field in safety, and dispose
Of their dead bodies!

King Henry. I tell thee truly, herald,

I know not if the day be ours or no,
For yet a many of your horsemen peer
And gallop o'er the field.

Montjoy. The day is yours.

King Henry. Praised be God, and not our strength, for it!

What is this castle call'd that stands hard by?

Montjoy. They call it Agincourt.

King Henry. Then call we this the field of Agincourt,
Fought on the day of Crispin Crispianus.

Fluellen. Your grandfather of famous memory, an 't please your majesty, and your great-uncle Edward the Plack Prince of Wales, as I have read in the chronicles, fought a most prave pattle here in France.

King Henry. They did, Fluellen.

Fluellen. Your majesty says very true. If your majesties is remembered of it, the Welshmen did goot service in a garden where leeks did grow, wearing leeks in their Monmouth caps, which, your majesty know, to this hour is an honourable padge of the service; and I do pelieve your majesty takes no scorn to wear the leek upon Saint Tavy's day.

King Henry. I wear it for a memorable honour;
For I am Welsh, you know, good countryman.

Fluellen. All the water in Wye cannot wash your majesty's Welsh ploot out of your pody, I can tell you that. Got pless it and preserve it, as long as it pleases his grace, and his majesty too!

King Henry. Thanks, good my countryman.

Fluellen. By Cheshu, I am your majesty's countryman, I care not who know it; I will confess it to all the world. I need not to pe ashamed of your majesty, praised pe Got, so long as your majesty is an honest man.

King Henry. God keep me so! — Our heralds go with him.
Bring me just notice of the numbers dead
On both our parts. — Call yonder fellow hither.

[*Points to Williams. Exeunt Heralds, with Montjoy.*

Exeter. Soldier, you must come to the king.

King Henry. Soldier, why wearest thou that glove in thy cap?

Williams. An 't please your majesty, 't is the gage of one that I should fight withal, if he be alive.

King Henry. An Englishman?

Williams. An 't please your majesty, a rascal that swaggered with me last night, who, if alive and ever dare to challenge this glove, I have sworn to take him a box o' th' ear; or if I can see my glove in his cap, which he swore, as he was a soldier, he would wear if alive, I will strike it out soundly.

King Henry. What think you, Captain Fluellen? is it fit this soldier keep his oath?

Fluellen. He is a craven and a villain else, an 't please your majesty, in my conscience.

King Henry. It may be his enemy is a gentleman of great sort, quite from the answer of his degree.

Fluellen. Though he pe as goot a gentleman as the tevil is, as Lucifer and Pelzebub himself, it is necessary, look your grace, that he keep his vow and his oath; if he pe perjured, see you now, his reputation is as arrant a villain and a Jack-sauce, as ever his plack shoe trod upon Got's ground and his earth, in my conscience, la!

King Henry. Then keep thy vow, sirrah, when thou meetest the fellow.

Williams. So I will, my liege, as I live.

King Henry. Who servest thou under?

Williams. Under Captain Gower, my liege.

Fluellen. Gower is a goot captain, and is goot knowledge and literatured in the wars.

King Henry. Call him hither to me, soldier.

Williams. I will, my liege. [*Exit.*

King Henry. Here, Fluellen; wear thou this favour for me and stick it in thy cap. When Alençon and myself were down together, I plucked this glove from his helm. If any man challenge this, he is a friend to Alençon, and an enemy to our person; if thou encounter any such, apprehend him, an thou dost me love.

Fluellen. Your grace does me as great honours as can pe desired in the hearts of his subjects. I would fain see the man, that has but two legs, that shall find himself aggriefed at this glove, that is all; but I would fain see it once, an please Got of his grace that I might see.

King Henry. Knowest thou Gower?

Fluellen. He is my dear friend, an please you.

King Henry. Pray thee, go seek him, and bring him to my tent.

Fluellen. I will fetch him. [*Exit.*

King Henry. My Lord of Warwick, and my brother Gloucester,
Follow Fluellen closely at the heels.
The glove which I have given him for a favour
May haply purchase him a box o' th' ear.
It is the soldier's; I by bargain should
Wear it myself. Follow, good cousin Warwick.
If that the soldier strike him, as I judge
By his blunt bearing he will keep his word,
Some sudden mischief may arise of it;
For I do know Fluellen valiant
And, touch'd with choler, hot as gunpowder,
And quickly will return an injury.
Follow, and see there be no harm between them. —
Go you with me, uncle of Exeter. [*Exeunt.*

Scene VIII. *Before King Henry's Pavilion*

Enter Gower *and* Williams

Williams. I warrant it is to knight you, captain.

Enter Fluellen

Fluellen. Got's will and his pleasure, captain, I peseech you now, come apace to the king; there is

more goot toward you peradventure than is in your knowledge to dream of.

Williams. Sir, know you this glove?

Fluellen. Know the glove! I know the glove is a glove.

Williams. I know this, and thus I challenge it.

[*Strikes him.*

Fluellen. 'Sblood! an arrant traitor as any is in the universal world, or in France, or in England!

Gower. How now, sir! you villain!

Williams. Do you think I 'll be forsworn?

Fluellen. Stand away, Captain Gower; I will give treason his payment into plows, I warrant you.

Williams. I am no traitor.

Fluellen. That 's a lie in thy throat. — I charge you in his majesty's name, apprehend him; he 's a friend of the Duke Alençon's.

Enter Warwick *and* Gloucester

Warwick. How now, how now! what 's the matter?

Fluellen. My Lord of Warwick, here is — praised pe Got for it! — a most contagious treason come to light, look you, as you shall desire in a summer's day. Here is his majesty.

Enter King Henry *and* Exeter

King Henry. How now! what 's the matter?

Fluellen. My liege, here is a villain and a traitor,

that, look your grace, has struck the glove which your majesty is take out of the helmet of Alençon.

Williams. My liege, this was my glove; here is the fellow of it; and he that I gave it to in change promised to wear it in his cap; I promised to strike him, if he did. I met this man with my glove in his cap, and I have been as good as my word.

Fluellen. Your majesty hear now, saving your majesty's manhood, what an arrant, rascally, peggarly, lousy knave it is. I hope your majesty is pear me testimony and witness, and will avouchment, that this is the glove of Alençon, that your majesty is give me; in your conscience, now?

King Henry. Give me thy glove, soldier; look, here is the fellow of it.
'T was I, indeed, thou promised'st to strike;
And thou hast given me most bitter terms.

Fluellen. An please your majesty, let his neck answer for it, if there is any martial law in the world.

King Henry. How canst thou make me satisfaction?

Williams. All offences, my lord, come from the heart; never came any from mine that might offend your majesty.

King Henry. It was ourself thou didst abuse.

Williams. Your majesty came not like yourself. You appeared to me but as a common man; witness the night, your garments, your lowliness; and what your highness suffered under that shape, I beseech

you take it for your own fault and not mine; for had you been as I took you for, I made no offence. Therefore, I beseech your highness, pardon me.

King Henry. Here uncle Exeter, fill this glove with crowns,

And give it to this fellow. — Keep it, fellow;
And wear it for an honour in thy cap
Till I do challenge it. — Give him the crowns;
And, captain, you must needs be friends with him.

Fluellen. By this day and this light, the fellow has mettle enough in his belly. Hold, there is twelve pence for you; and I pray you to serve God, and keep you out of prawls, and prabbles, and quarrels, and dissensions, and, I warrant you, it is the better for you.

Williams. I will none of your money.

Fluellen. It is with a good will; I can tell you, it will serve you to mend your shoes. Come, wherefore should you be so pashful? your shoes is not so good; 'tis a good silling, I warrant you, or I will change it.

Enter an English Herald

King Henry. Now, herald, are the dead number'd?

Herald. Here is the number of the slaughter'd French.

King Henry. What prisoners of good sort are taken, uncle?

Exeter. Charles Duke of Orleans, nephew to the king;

John Duke of Bourbon, and Lord Bouciqualt:
Of other lords and barons, knights and squires,
Full fifteen hundred, besides common men.

King Henry. This note doth tell me of ten thousand French
That in the field lie slain; of princes, in this number,
And nobles bearing banners, there lie dead
One hundred twenty-six; added to these,
Of knights, esquires, and gallant gentlemen,
Eight thousand and four hundred; of the which,
Five hundred were but yesterday dubb'd knights.
So that, in these ten thousand they have lost,
There are but sixteen hundred mercenaries;
The rest are princes, barons, lords, knights, squires,
And gentlemen of blood and quality.
The names of those their nobles that lie dead:
Charles Delabreth, high constable of France;
Jacques of Chatillon, admiral of France;
The master of the cross-bows, Lord Rambures;
Great Master of France, the brave Sir Guichard Dauphin,
John Duke of Alençon, Anthony Duke of Brabant,
The brother to the Duke of Burgundy,
And Edward Duke of Bar; of lusty earls,
Grandpré and Roussi, Fauconberg and Foix,
Beaumont and Marle, Vaudemont and Lestrale.
Here was a royal fellowship of death! —
Where is the number of our English dead? —

[*Herald shows him another paper.*

Edward the Duke of York, the Earl of Suffolk,
Sir Richard Ketly, Davy Gam, esquire:
None else of name; and of all other men
But five and twenty. — O God, Thy arm was here;
And not to us, but to Thy arm alone,
Ascribe we all! — When, without stratagem,
But in plain shock and even play of battle,
Was ever known so great and little loss
On one part and on the other? — Take it, God,
For it is none but Thine!

Exeter. 'T is wonderful!

King Henry. Come, go we in procession to the village;
And be it death proclaimed through our host
To boast of this, or take that praise from God
Which is His only.

Fluellen. Is it not lawful, an please your majesty, to tell how many is killed?

King Henry. Yes, captain; but with this acknowledgment,
That God fought for us.

Fluellen. Yes, my conscience, he did us great goot.

King Henry. Do we all holy rites;
Let there be sung 'Non nobis' and 'Te Deum.'
The dead with charity enclos'd in clay,
We 'll then to Calais; and to England then,
Where ne'er from France arriv'd more happy men.

[*Exeunt.*

Isabella of Bavaria

ACT V

Prologue

Enter Chorus

Chorus. Vouchsafe to those that have not read the story,
That I may prompt them; and of such as have,
I humbly pray them to admit the excuse
Of time, of numbers, and due course of things,
Which cannot in their huge and proper life
Be here presented. Now we bear the king
Toward Calais. Grant him there; there seen,
Heave him away upon your winged thoughts
Athwart the sea. Behold, the English beach

Pales in the flood with men, with wives, and boys,
Whose shouts and claps out-voice the deep-mouth'd sea,
Which like a mighty whiffler fore the king
Seems to prepare his way; so let him land,
And solemnly see him set on to London.
So swift a pace hath thought that even now
You may imagine him upon Blackheath,
Where that his lords desire him to have borne
His bruised helmet and his bended sword
Before him through the city; he forbids it,
Being free from vainness and self-glorious pride,
Giving full trophy, signal, and ostent
Quite from himself to God. But now behold,
In the quick forge and working-house of thought,
How London doth pour out her citizens!
The mayor and all his brethren in best sort,
Like to the senators of the antique Rome,
With the plebeians swarming at their heels,
Go forth and fetch their conquering Cæsar in;
As, by a lower but loving likelihood,
Were now the general of our gracious empress,
As in good time he may, from Ireland coming,
Bringing rebellion broached on his sword,
How many would the peaceful city quit,
To welcome him! much more, and much more cause,
Did they this Harry. Now in London place him;—
As yet the lamentation of the French
Invites the King of England's stay at home,
The emperor coming in behalf of France

To order peace between them; — and omit
All the occurrences, whatever chanc'd,
Till Harry's back-return again to France.
There must we bring him; and myself have play'd
The interim by remembering you 't is past.
Then brook abridgment and your eyes advance,
After your thoughts, straight back again to France.
[*Exit.*

SCENE I. *France. The English Camp*

Enter FLUELLEN *and* GOWER

Gower. Nay, that 's right; but why wear you your leek to-day? Saint Davy's day is past.

Fluellen. There is occasions and causes why and wherefore in all things. I will tell you, as my friend, Captain Gower: the rascally, scald, peggarly, lousy, pragging knave, Pistol, which you and yourself and all the world know to pe no petter than a fellow, look you now, of no merits, he is come to me and prings me pread and salt yesterday, look you, and pid me eat my leek. It was in a place where I could not preed no contention with him: but I will pe so pold as to wear it in my cap till I see him once again, and then I will tell him a little piece of my desires.

Enter PISTOL

Gower. Why, here he comes, swelling like a turkey-cock.

Fluellen. 'T is no matter for his swellings nor his

turkey-cocks. — Got pless you, Aunchient Pistol! you scurvy, lousy knave, Got pless you!

Pistol. Ha! art thou bedlam? dost thou thirst, base Trojan,
'To have me fold up Parca's fatal web?
Hence! I am qualmish at the smell of leek.

Fluellen. I peseech you heartily, scurvy, lousy knave, at my desires, and my requests, and my petitions, to eat, look you, this leek; because, look you, you do not love it, nor your affections and your appetites and your digestions does not agree with it, I would desire you to eat it.

Pistol. Not for Cadwallader and all his goats.

Fluellen. There is one goat for you. [*Strikes him.*] Will you pe so goot, scald knave, as eat it?

Pistol. Base Trojan, thou shalt die.

Fluellen. You say very true, scald knave, when Got's will is. I will desire you to live in the mean time, and eat your victuals; come, there is sauce for it. [*Strikes him.*] You called me yesterday mountain-squire; but I will make you to-day a squire of low degree. I pray you, fall to; if you can mock a leek, you can eat a leek.

Gower. Enough, captain; you have astonished him.

Fluellen. I say, I will make him eat some part of my leek, or I will peat his pate four days. — Pite, I pray you; it is goot for your green wound and your ploody coxcomb.

Pistol. Must I bite?

Fluellen. Yes, certainly, and out of doubt and out of question too, and ambiguities.

Pistol. By this leek, I will most horribly revenge. I eat, and yet I swear —

Fluellen. Eat, I pray you. Will you have some more sauce to your leek? there is not enough leek to swear py.

Pistol. Quiet thy cudgel; thou dost see I eat.

Fluellen. Much goot do you, scald knave, heartily. Nay, pray you, throw none away: the skin is goot for your proken coxcomb. When you take occasions to see leeks hereafter, I pray you, mock at 'em; that is all.

Pistol. Good.

Fluellen. Ay, leeks is goot. Hold you, there is a groat to heal your pate.

Pistol. Me a groat!

Fluellen. Yes, verily and in truth, you shall take it, or I have another leek in my pocket which you shall eat.

Pistol. I take thy groat in earnest of revenge.

Fluellen. If I owe you anything, I will pay you in cudgels; you shall pe a woodmonger, and puy nothing of me but cudgels. Got b' wi' you, and keep you, and heal your pate. [*Exit.*

Pistol. All hell shall stir for this.

Gower. Go, go; you are a counterfeit cowardly knave. Will you mock at an ancient tradition, begun upon an honourable respect, and worn as a mem-

orable trophy of predeceased valour, and dare not avouch in your deeds any of your words? I have seen you gleeking and galling at this gentleman twice or thrice. You thought, because he could not speak English in the native garb, he could not therefore handle an English cudgel; you find it otherwise, and henceforth let a Welsh correction teach you a good English condition. Fare ye well. [*Exit.*

Pistol. Doth Fortune play the huswife with me now?
News have I that my Nell is dead i' the spital
Of malady of France,
And there my rendezvous is quite cut off.
Old I do wax, and from my weary limbs
Honour is cudgell'd. Well, bawd will I turn,
And something lean to cutpurse of quick hand.
To England will I steal, and there I 'll steal;
And patches will I get unto these cudgell'd scars,
And swear I got them in the Gallia wars. [*Exit.*

Scene II. *Troyes. A Room in the Palace.*

Enter, at one door, King Henry, Exeter, Bedford, Gloucester, Warwick, Westmoreland, *and other* Lords; *at another, the* French King, Queen Isabel, *the* Princess Katherine, Alice, *and other* Ladies, *the* Duke of Burgundy, *and his train*

King Henry. Peace to this meeting, wherefore we are met! —

Unto our brother France, and to our sister,
Health and fair time of day; — joy and good wishes
To our most fair and princely cousin Katherine; —
And, as a branch and member of this royalty,
By whom this great assembly is contriv'd,
We do salute you, Duke of Burgundy; —
And, princes French, and peers, health to you all!

French King. Right joyous are we to behold your face,
Most worthy brother England; fairly met. —
So are you, princes English, every one.

Queen Isabel. So happy be the issue, brother England,
Of this good day and of this gracious meeting
As we are now glad to behold your eyes;
Your eyes, which hitherto have borne in them
Against the French, that met them in their bent,
The fatal balls of murthering basilisks.
The venom of such looks, we fairly hope,
Have lost their quality, and that this day
Shall change all griefs and quarrels into love.

King Henry. To cry amen to that, thus we appear.

Queen Isabel. You English princes all, I do salute you.

Burgundy. My duty to you both, on equal love,
Great Kings of France and England! That I have labour'd
With all my wits, my pains, and strong endeavours,
To bring your most imperial majesties
Unto this bar and royal interview,

Your mightiness on both parts best can witness.
Since then my office hath so far prevail'd
That, face to face and royal eye to eye,
You have congreeted, let it not disgrace me,
If I demand, before this royal view,
What rub or what impediment there is,
Why that the naked, poor, and mangled Peace,
Dear nurse of arts, plenties, and joyful births,
Should not in this best garden of the world,
Our fertile France, put up her lovely visage?
Alas, she hath from France too long been chas'd,
And all her husbandry doth lie on heaps,
Corrupting in it own fertility.
Her vine, the merry cheerer of the heart,
Unpruned dies; her hedges even-pleach'd,
Like prisoners wildly overgrown with hair,
Put forth disorder'd twigs; her fallow leas
The darnel, hemlock, and rank fumitory
Doth root upon, while that the coulter rusts
That should deracinate such savagery;
The even mead, that erst brought sweetly forth
The freckled cowslip, burnet, and green clover,
Wanting the scythe, all uncorrected, rank,
Conceives by idleness, and nothing teems
But hateful docks, rough thistles, kecksies, burs,
Losing both beauty and utility.
And as our vineyards, fallows, meads, and hedges,
Defective in their natures, grow to wildness,
Even so our houses and ourselves and children

Have lost, or do not learn for want of time,
The sciences that should become our country,
But grow like savages — as soldiers will
That nothing do but meditate on blood, —
To swearing and stern looks, diffus'd attire,
And every thing that seems unnatural.
Which to reduce into our former favour
You are assembled; and my speech entreats
That I may know the let why gentle Peace
Should not expel these inconveniences
And bless us with her former qualities.

King Henry. If, Duke of Burgundy, you would the peace,
Whose want gives growth to the imperfections
Which you have cited, you must buy that peace
With full accord to all our just demands,
Whose tenors and particular effects
You have enschedul'd briefly in your hands.

Burgundy. The king hath heard them, to the which as yet
There is no answer made.

King Henry. Well then the peace,
Which you before so urg'd, lies in his answer.

French King. I have but with a cursorary eye
O'erglanc'd the articles. Pleaseth your grace
To appoint some of your council presently
To sit with us once more, with better heed
To re-survey them, we will suddenly
Pass our accept and peremptory answer.

King Henry. Brother, we shall. — Go, uncle Exeter,
And brother Clarence, and you, brother Gloucester,
Warwick and Huntingdon, go with the king;
And take with you free power to ratify,
Augment, or alter, as your wisdoms best
Shall see advantageable for our dignity,
Any thing in or out of our demands,
And we 'll consign thereto. — Will you, fair sister,
Go with the princes, or stay here with us?

Queen Isabel. Our gracious brother, I will go with them;
Haply a woman's voice may do some good
When articles too nicely urg'd be stood on.

King Henry. Yet leave our cousin Katherine here with us.
She is our capital demand, compris'd
Within the fore-rank of our articles.

Queen Isabel. She hath good leave.

[*Exeunt all except Henry, Katherine, and Alice.*

King Henry. Fair Katherine, and most fair,
Will you vouchsafe to teach a soldier terms
Such as will enter at a lady's ear
And plead his love-suit to her gentle heart?

Katherine. Your majesty sall mock at me; I cannot speak your England.

King Henry. O fair Katherine, if you will love me soundly with your French heart, I will be glad to hear you confess it brokenly with your English tongue. Do you like me, Kate?

Katherine. Pardonnez-moi, I cannot tell vat is 'like me.'

King Henry. An angel is like you, Kate, and you are like an angel.

Katherine. Que dit-il? que je suis semblable à les anges?

Alice. Oui, vraiment, sauf votre grace, ainsi dit-il.

King Henry. I said so, dear Katherine; and I must not blush to affirm it.

Katherine. O bon Dieu! les langues des hommes sont pleines de tromperies.

King Henry. What says she, fair one? that the tongues of men are full of deceits?

Alice. Oui, dat de tongues of de mans is be full of deceits; dat is de princess.

King Henry. The princess is the better English-woman. I' faith, Kate, my wooing is fit for thy understanding. I am glad thou canst speak no better English; for, if thou couldst, thou wouldst find me such a plain king that thou wouldst think I had sold my farm to buy my crown. I know no ways to mince it in love, but directly to say 'I love you'; then if you urge me farther than to say 'do you in faith?' I wear out my suit. Give me your answer; i' faith, do, and so clap hands and a bargain. How say you, lady?

Katherine. Sauf votre honneur, me understand vell.

King Henry. Marry, if you would put me to verses

or to dance for your sake, Kate, why you undid me; for the one I have neither words nor measure, and for the other I have no strength in measure, yet a reasonable measure in strength. If I could win a lady at leap-frog, or by vaulting into my saddle with my armour on my back, under the correction of bragging be it spoken, I should quickly leap into a wife. Or if I might buffet for my love, or bound my horse for her favours, I could lay on like a butcher and sit like a jack-an-apes, never off. But, before God, Kate, I cannot look greenly nor gasp out my eloquence, nor I have no cunning in protestation; only downright oaths, which I never use till urged, nor never break for urging. If thou canst love a fellow of this temper, Kate, whose face is not worth sun-burning, that never looks in his glass for love of any thing he sees there, let thine eye be thy cook. I speak to thee plain soldier. If thou canst love me for this, take me; if not, to say to thee that I shall die is true; but for thy love, by the Lord, no; yet I love thee too. And while thou livest, dear Kate, take a fellow of plain and uncoined constancy, for he perforce must do thee right, because he hath not the gift to woo in other places; for these fellows of infinite tongue, that can rhyme themselves into ladies' favours, they do always reason themselves out again. What! a speaker is but a prater; a rhyme is but a ballad. A good leg will fall, a straight back will stoop, a black beard will turn white, a curled pate will grow

bald, a fair face will wither, a full eye will wax hollow; but a good heart, Kate, is the sun and the moon, or rather the sun and not the moon, for it shines bright and never changes, but keeps his course truly. If thou would have such a one, take me; and take me, take a soldier; take a soldier, take a king. And what sayest thou then to my love? speak, my fair, and fairly, I pray thee.

Katherine. Is it possible dat I sould love de enemy of France?

King Henry. No, it is not possible you should love the enemy of France, Kate; but, in loving me, you should love the friend of France, for I love France so well that I will not part with a village of it. I will have it all mine; and, Kate, when France is mine and I am yours, then yours is France and you are mine.

Katherine. I cannot tell vat is dat.

King Henry. No, Kate? I will tell thee in French, which I am sure will hang upon my tongue like a new-married wife about her husband's neck, hardly to be shook off. Quand j' ai le possession de France, et quand vous avez le possession de moi, — let me see, what then? Saint Denis be my speed! — donc votre est France et vous êtes mienne. It is as easy for me, Kate, to conquer the kingdom as to speak so much more French; I shall never move thee in French, unless it be to laugh at me.

Katherine. Sauf votre honneur, le Français que

vous parlez, il est meilleur que l' Anglais lequel je parle.

King Henry. No, faith, is 't not, Kate; but thy speaking of my tongue, and I thine, most truly-falsely, must needs be granted to be much at one. But, Kate, dost thou understand thus much English, canst thou love me?

Katherine. I cannot tell.

King Henry. Can any of your neighbours tell, Kate? I 'll ask them. Come, I know thou lovest me; and at night, when you come into your closet, you 'll question this gentlewoman about me, and I know, Kate, you will to her dispraise those parts in me that you love with your heart. But, good Kate, mock me mercifully; the rather, gentle princess, because I love thee cruelly. If ever thou beest mine, Kate, as I have a saving faith within me tells me thou shalt, I get thee with scambling, and thou must therefore needs prove a good soldier-breeder. What sayest thou, my fair flower-de-luce?

Katherine. I do not know dat.

King Henry. No; 't is hereafter to know, but now to promise. Do but now promise, Kate, you will endeavour for your French part, and for my English moiety take the word of a king and a bachelor. How answer you, la plus belle Katherine du monde, mon très-cher et divin déesse?

Katherine. Your majestee ave fausse French enough to deceive de most sage demoiselle dat is en France.

King Henry. Now, fie upon my false French! By mine honour, in true English, I love thee, Kate; by which honour I dare not swear thou lovest me, yet my blood begins to flatter me that thou dost, notwithstanding the poor and untempering effect of my visage. Now, beshrew my father's ambition! he was thinking of civil wars when he got me; therefore was I created with a stubborn outside, with an aspect of iron, that, when I come to woo ladies, I fright them. But, in faith, Kate, the elder I wax, the better I shall appear; my comfort is, that old age, that ill layer up of beauty, can do no more spoil upon my face. Thou hast me, if thou hast me, at the worst, and thou shalt wear me, if thou wear me, better and better; and therefore tell me, most fair Katherine, will you have me? Put off your maiden blushes; avouch the thoughts of your heart with the looks of an empress; take me by the hand, and say 'Harry of England, I am thine;' which word thou shalt no sooner bless mine ear withal, but I will tell thee aloud, 'England is thine, Ireland is thine, France is thine, and Henry Plantagenet is thine,' who, though I speak it before his face, if he be not fellow with the best king, thou shalt find the best king of good fellows. Come, your answer in broken music, for thy voice is music and thy English broken. Therefore, queen of all, Katherine, break thy mind to me in broken English: wilt thou have me?

Katherine. Dat is as it sall please de roi mon père.

King Henry. Nay, it will please him well, Kate; it shall please him, Kate.

Katherine. Den it sall also content me.

King Henry. Upon that I kiss your hand, and I call you my queen.

Katherine. Laissez, mon seigneur, laissez, laissez. Ma foi, je ne veux point que vous abaissiez votre grandeur en baisant la main d'une votre indigne serviteur; excusez-moi, je vous supplie, mon très-puissant seigneur.

King Henry. Then I will kiss your lips, Kate.

Katherine. Les dames et demoiselles pour être baisées devant leur noces, il n'est pas la coûtume de France.

King Henry. Madam my interpreter, what says she?

Alice. Dat it is not be de fashion pour les ladies of France, — I cannot tell vat is baiser en Anglish.

King Henry. To kiss.

Alice. Your majesty entendre bettre que moi.

King Henry. It is not a fashion for the maids in France to kiss before they are married, would she say?

Alice. Oui, vraiment.

King Henry. O Kate, nice customs curtsy to great kings. Dear Kate, you and I cannot be confined within the weak list of a country's fashion. We are the makers of manners, Kate, and the liberty that follows our places stops the mouth of all find-faults,

as I will do yours for upholding the nice fashion of your country in denying me a kiss; therefore, patiently and yielding. [*Kissing her.*] You have witchcraft in your lips, Kate; there is more eloquence in a sugar touch of them than in the tongues of the French council, and they should sooner persuade Harry of England than a general petition of monarchs. Here comes your father.

Re-enter the FRENCH KING *and his* QUEEN, BURGUNDY, *and other* Lords

Burgundy. God save your majesty! my royal cousin, teach you our princess English?

King Henry. I would have her learn, my fair cousin, how perfectly I love her; and that is good English.

Burgundy. Is she not apt?

King Henry. Our tongue is rough, coz, and my condition is not smooth; so that, having neither the voice nor the heart of flattery about me, I cannot so conjure up the spirit of love in her that he will appear in his true likeness.

Burgundy. Pardon the frankness of my mirth if I answer you for that. If you would conjure in her, you must make a circle; if conjure up love in her in his true likeness, he must appear naked and blind. Can you blame her then, being a maid yet rosed over with the virgin crimson of modesty, if she deny the

appearance of a naked blind boy? It were, my lord, a hard condition for a maid to consign to.

King Henry. Yet they do wink and yield, as love is blind and enforces.

Burgundy. They are then excused, my lord, when they see not what they do.

King Henry. Then, good my lord, teach your cousin to consent winking.

Burgundy. I will wink on her to consent, my lord, if you will teach her to know my meaning; for maids, well summered and warm kept, are like flies at Bartholomew-tide, blind, though they have their eyes.

King Henry. This moral ties me over to time and a hot summer; and so I shall catch the fly, your cousin, in the latter end, and she must be blind too.

Burgundy. As love is, my lord, before it loves.

King Henry. It is so; and you may, some of you, thank love for my blindness, who cannot see many a fair French city for one fair French maid that stands in my way.

French King. Yes, my lord, you see them perspectively, the cities turned into a maid; for they are all girdled with maiden walls that war hath never entered.

King Henry. Shall Kate be my wife?

French King. So please you.

King Henry. I am content, so the maiden cities you talk of may wait on her; so the maid that stood in the way for my wish shall show me the way to my will.

French King. We have consented to all terms of reason.

King Henry. Is 't so, my lords of England?

Westmoreland. The king hath granted every article:

His daughter first, and then in sequel all,
According to their firm proposed natures.

Exeter. Only he hath not yet subscribed this: Where your majesty demands that the King of France, having any occasion to write for matter of grant, shall name your highness in this form and with this addition, in French, Notre très-cher fils Henri, roi d' Angleterre, héritier de France; and thus in Latin, Præclarissimus filius noster Henricus, rex Angliæ, et hæres Franciæ.

French King. Nor this I have not, brother, so denied
But your request shall make me let it pass.

King Henry. I pray you then, in love and dear alliance,
Let that one article rank with the rest,
And thereupon give me your daughter.

French King. Take her, fair son, and from her blood raise up
Issue to me; that the contending kingdoms
Of France and England, whose very shores look pale
With envy of each other's happiness,
May cease their hatred, and this dear conjunction
Plant neighbourhood and Christian-like accord

In their sweet bosoms, that never war advance
His bleeding sword 'twixt England and fair France.

All. Amen!

King Henry. Now, welcome, Kate; — and bear me witness all,
That here I kiss her as my sovereign queen. [*Flourish.*

Queen Isabel. God, the best maker of all marriages,
Combine your hearts in one, your realms in one!
As man and wife, being two, are one in love,
So be there 'twixt your kingdoms such a spousal
That never may ill office, or fell jealousy,
Which troubles oft the bed of blessed marriage,
Thrust in between the paction of these kingdoms,
To make divorce of their incorporate league;
That English may as French, French Englishmen,
Receive each other. God speak this Amen!

All. Amen!

King Henry. Prepare we for our marriage; — on which day
My lord of Burgundy, we 'll take your oath,
And all the peers', for surety of our leagues.
Then shall I swear to Kate, and you to me;
And may our oaths well kept and prosperous be!

[*Sennet. Exeunt.*

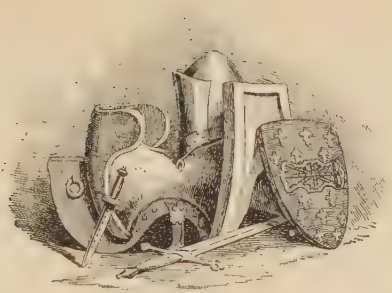
Epilogue

Enter Chorus

Chorus. Thus far, with rough and all-unable pen,
Our bending author hath pursued the story,

In little room confining mighty men,
Mangling by starts the full course of their glory.
Small time, but in that small most greatly liv'd
This star of England. Fortune made his sword,
By which the world's best garden he achiev'd,
And of it left his son imperial lord.
Henry the Sixth, in infant bands crown'd King
Of France and England, did this king succeed,
Whose state so many had the managing
That they lost France and made his England bleed,
Which oft our stage hath shown; and, for their sake,
In your fair minds let this acceptance take. [*Exit.*

NOTES



HELMET, SHIELD, ETC.

NOTES

INTRODUCTION

THE METRE OF THE PLAY. — It should be understood at the outset that *metre*, or the mechanism of verse, is something altogether distinct from the *music* of verse. The one is matter of rule, the other of taste and feeling. Music is not an absolute necessity of verse ; the metrical form is a necessity, being that which constitutes the verse.

The plays of Shakespeare (with the exception of rhymed passages, and of occasional songs and interludes) are all in unrhymed or *blank* verse ; and the normal form of this blank verse is illustrated by the twelfth line of the prologue of the present play: "The vasty fields of France? or may we cram."

This line, it will be seen, consists of ten syllables, with the even syllables (2d, 4th, 6th, 8th, and 10th) accented, the odd syllables (1st, 3d, etc.) being unaccented. Theoretically, it is made up of five *feet* of two syllables each, with the accent on the second syllable. Such a foot is called an *iambus* (plural, *iambuses*, or the Latin *iambi*), and the form of verse is called *iambic*.

This fundamental law of Shakespeare's verse is subject to certain modifications, the most important of which are as follows: —

1. After the tenth syllable an unaccented syllable (or even two such syllables) may be added, forming what is sometimes called a *female* line; as in the twenty-sixth line of the prologue: "Think, when we talk of horses, that you see them." The rhythm is complete with *see*, the *them* being an extra eleventh syllable. Occasionally we have two extra syllables, as in *M. of V.* i. 1. 69: "My Lord Bassanio, since you've found Antonio"; the rhythm being complete with the second syllable of *Antonio*.

2. The accent in any part of the verse may be shifted from an even to an odd syllable; as in lines 30, 31 of the prologue: —

> "Turning the accomplishment of many years
> Into an hour-glass; for the which supply."

In both lines the accent is shifted from the second to the first syllable. This change occurs very rarely in the tenth syllable, and seldom in the fourth; and it is not allowable in two successive accented syllables.

3. An extra unaccented syllable may occur in any part of the line; as in lines 8, 22, and 30 of the prologue. In 8 the last syllable of *employment* is superfluous; in 22 the second syllable of *perilous*; and in 30 the word *the*. Line 22 has also the unaccented final syllable in *asunder*, making it a female line.

4. Any unaccented syllable, occurring in an even place immediately before or after an even syllable which is properly accented, is reckoned as accented for the purposes of the verse; as, for instance, in lines 14, 18, and 25 of the prologue. In 14 the last syllable of *Agincourt*, and in 18 the fourth syllable of *imaginary* are metrically equivalent to accented syllables; and so with the fourth syllable of *imaginary* and the last of *pursuance* in 25. Other examples are the last syllable of *accomplishment* in 30, and that of *history* in 32.

5. In many instances in Shakespeare words must be *lengthened* in order to fill out the rhythm: —

(*a*) In a large class of words in which *e* or *i* is followed by another vowel, the *e* or *i* is made a separate syllable; as *ocean*, *opinion*, *soldier*, *patience*, *partial*, *marriage*, etc. For instance, line 2 of the prologue appears to have only nine syllables, but *invention* (see note on the word) is a quadrisyllable. In i. 2. 79 *conscience* is a trisyllable ; and so are *ocean* in iii. 1. 14 and *valiant* in iv. 1. 46 and iv. 7. 181. *Speculation* has five syllables in iv. 2. 31. This lengthening occurs most frequently at the end of the line.

(*b*) Many monosyllables ending in *r*, *re*, *rs*, *res*, preceded by a long vowel or diphthong, are often made dissyllables ; as *fare*, *fear*, *dear*, *fire*, *hair*, *hour*, *your*, etc. In *M. of V.* iii. 2. 297 "Shall lose a hair through Bassanio's fault," *hair* is a dissyllable. If the word is repeated in a verse, it is often both monosyllable and dissyllable; as in *Id.* iii. 2. 20: "And so, though yours, not yours. Prove it so," where either *yours* (preferably the first) is a dissyllable, the other being a monosyllable. In *J. C.* iii. 1. 172: "As fire drives out fire, so pity, pity," the first *fire* is a dissyllable.

(*c*) Words containing *l* or *r*, preceded by another consonant, are often pronounced as if a vowel came between the consonants; as in *T. of S.* ii. 1. 158: "While she did call me rascal fiddler" [fidd(e)ler]; *A. W.* iii. 5. 43: "If you will tarry, holy pilgrim" [pilg(e)rim]; *C. of E.* v. 1. 360: "These are the parents of these children" (childeren, the original form of the word); *W. T.* iv. 4. 76: Grace and remembrance [rememb(e)rance] be to you both!" etc.

(*d*) Monosyllabic exclamations (*ay*, *O*, *yea*, *nay*, *hail*, etc.) and monosyllables otherwise emphasized are similarly lengthened; also certain longer words; as *commandement* in *M. of V.* iv. 1. 442; *safety* (trisyllable) in *Ham.* i. 3. 21; *business* (trisyllable, as originally pronounced) in *J. C.* iv. 1. 22: "To groan and sweat under the business" (so in several other passages); and other words mentioned in the notes to the plays in which they occur.

6. Words are also *contracted* for metrical reasons, like plurals

and possessives ending in a sibilant, as *balance, horse* (for *horses* and *horse's*), *princess, sense, marriage* (plural and possessive), *image*, etc. So *mightiness* (plural in v. 2. 28 of this play), *inter'gatories, unpleasant'st*, and other words mentioned in the notes on this and other plays.

7. The *accent* of words is also varied in many instances for metrical reasons. Thus we find both *révenue* and *revénue* in the first scene of the *M. N. D.* (lines 6 and 158), *precépt* (see note on iii. 3. 26) and *précept, rélapse* (see on iv. 3. 107) and *relápse, obscure* and *obscúre, pursue* and *pursúe, distinct* and *distinct*, etc.

These instances of variable accent must not be confounded with those in which words were uniformly accented differently in the time of Shakespeare; like *sinister* (see on ii. 4. 85), *aspect, impórtune, perséver* (never *persevére*), *persíverance, rheumatic*, etc.

8. *Alexandrines*, or verses of twelve syllables, with six accents, occur here and there; as in ii. 2. 168, iii. 3. 5, iii. 5. 24, iv. prol. 22, 28, iv. 3. 18, 33, etc., in this play. They must not be confounded with female lines with two extra syllables (see on 1 above) or with other lines in which two extra unaccented syllables may occur. Some alexandrines have the extra syllable at the end, or thirteen syllables in all.

9. *Incomplete* verses, of one or more syllables, are scattered through the plays. See i. 1. 21, 94, i. 2. 32, 139, 298, ii. 4. 48, iii. 5. 9, 29, etc., of this play.

10. *Doggerel* measure is used in the very earliest comedies (*L. L. L.* and *C. of E.* in particular) in the mouths of comic characters, but nowhere else in those plays, and never anywhere after 1598 or 1599.

11. *Rhyme* occurs frequently in the early plays, but diminishes with comparative regularity from that period until the latest. Thus, in *L. L. L.* there are about 1100 rhyming verses (about one-third of the whole number), in the *M. N. D.* about 900, in *Rich. II.* and *R. and J.* about 500 each, while in *Cor.* and *A. and C.* there are only about 40 each, in the *Temp.* only two, and in the *W. T.*

none at all, except in the chorus introducing act iv. Songs, interludes, and other matter not in ten-syllable measure are not included in this enumeration. In the present play, out of some 2000 verses, only about 60 are in rhyme.

Alternate rhymes are found only in the plays written before 1599 or 1600. In the *M. of V.* there are only four lines at the end of iii. 2. In *Much Ado* and *A. Y. L.* we also find a few lines, but none at all in subsequent plays.

Rhymed couplets, or "rhyme-tags," are often found at the end of scenes; as in i. 2 and twelve other scenes of this play, besides the five prologues and the epilogue. In *Ham.* 14 out of 20 scenes, and in *Macb.* 21 out of 28, have such "tags"; but in the latest plays they are not so frequent. The *Temp.*, for instance, has but one, and the *W. T.* none.

12. In this edition of Shakespeare, the final *-ed* of past tenses and participles is printed *-'d* when the word is to be pronounced in the ordinary way; as in *leash'd*, line 7, and *dar'd*, line 9, of the prologue. But when the metre requires that the *-ed* be made a separate syllable, the *e* is retained; as in *unraised*, line 9, where the word is a trisyllable. The only variation from this rule is in verbs like *cry*, *die*, etc., the *-ed* of which is very rarely made a separate syllable. In iii. 3. 9 *buried* is a trisyllable.

Shakespeare's Use of Verse and Prose in the Plays. — This is a subject to which the critics have given very little attention, but it is an interesting study. In this play we find scenes entirely in verse or in prose, and others in which the two are mixed. In general, we may say that verse is used for what is distinctly poetical, and prose for what is not poetical. The distinction, however, is not so clearly marked in the earlier as in the later plays. The second scene of the *M. of V.*, for instance, is in prose, because Portia and Nerissa are talking about the suitors in a familiar and playful way; but in the *T. G. of V.*, where Julia and Lucetta are discussing the suitors of the former in much the same fashion, the scene is in verse. Dowden, commenting on *Rich. II.*,

remarks: "Had Shakespeare written the play a few years later, we may be certain that the gardener and his servants (iii. 4) would not have uttered stately speeches in verse, but would have spoken homely prose, and that humour would have mingled with the pathos of the scene. The same remark may be made with reference to the subsequent scene (v. 5) in which his groom visits the dethroned king in the Tower." Comic characters and those in low life generally speak in prose in the later plays, as Dowden intimates, but in the very earliest ones doggerel verse is much used instead. See on 10 above.

The change from prose to verse is well illustrated in the third scene of the *M. of V.* It begins with plain prosaic talk about a business matter; but when Antonio enters, it rises at once to the higher level of poetry. The sight of Antonio reminds Shylock of his hatred of the Merchant, and the passion expresses itself in verse, the vernacular tongue of poetry. We have a similar change in the first scene of *J. C.*, where, after the quibbling "chaff" of the mechanics about their trades, the mention of Pompey reminds the Tribune of their plebeian fickleness, and his scorn and indignation flame out in most eloquent verse.

The reasons for the choice of prose or verse are not always so clear as in these instances. We are seldom puzzled to explain the prose, but not unfrequently we meet with verse where we might expect prose. As Professor Corson remarks (*Introduction to Shakespeare*, 1889), "Shakespeare adopted verse as the general tenor of his language, and therefore expressed much in verse that is within the capabilities of prose; in other words, his verse constantly encroaches upon the domain of prose, but his prose can never be said to encroach upon the domain of verse." If in rare instances we think we find exceptions to this latter statement, and prose actually seems to usurp the place of verse, I believe that careful study of the passage will prove the supposed exception to be apparent rather than real.

Some Books for Teachers and Students. — A few out of

the many books that might be commended to the teacher and the critical student are the following: Halliwell-Phillipps's *Outlines of the Life of Shakespeare* (7th ed. 1887); Sidney Lee's *Life of Shakespeare* (1898; for ordinary students, the abridged ed. of 1899 is preferable); Schmidt's *Shakespeare Lexicon* (3d ed. 1902); Littledale's ed. of Dyce's *Glossary* (1902); Bartlett's *Concordance to Shakespeare* (1895); Abbott's *Shakespearian Grammar* (1873); Furness's "New Variorum" ed. of the plays (encyclopædic and exhaustive); Dowden's *Shakspere: His Mind and Art* (American ed. 1881); Hudson's *Life, Art, and Characters of Shakespeare* (revised ed. 1882); Mrs. Jameson's *Characteristics of Women* (several eds.; some with the title, *Shakespeare Heroines*); Ten Brink's *Five Lectures on Shakespeare* (1895); Boas's *Shakespeare and His Predecessors* (1895); Dyer's *Folk-lore of Shakespeare* (American ed. 1884); Gervinus's *Shakespeare Commentaries* (Bunnett's translation, 1875); Wordsworth's *Shakespeare's Knowledge of the Bible* (3d ed. 1880); Elson's *Shakespeare in Music* (1901).

Some of the above books will be useful to all readers who are interested in special subjects or in general criticism of Shakespeare. Among those which are better suited to the needs of ordinary readers and students, the following may be mentioned: Mabie's *William Shakespeare: Poet, Dramatist, and Man* (1900); Dowden's *Shakspere Primer* (1877; small but invaluable); Rolfe's *Shakespeare the Boy* (1896; treating of the home and school life, the games and sports, the manners, customs, and folk-lore of the poet's time); Guerber's *Myths of Greece and Rome* (for young students who may need information on mythological allusions not explained in the notes).

Black's *Judith Shakespeare* (1884; a novel, but a careful study of the scene and the time) is a book that I always commend to young people, and their elders will also enjoy it. The Lambs' *Tales from Shakespeare* is a classic for beginners in the study of the dramatist; and in Rolfe's ed. the plan of the authors is carried out in the Notes by copious illustrative quotations from the plays.

Mrs. Cowden-Clarke's *Girlhood of Shakespeare's Heroines* (several eds.) will particularly interest girls; and both girls and boys will find Bennett's *Master Skylark* (1897) and Imogen Clark's *Will Shakespeare's Little Lad* (1897) equally entertaining and instructive.

H. Snowden Ward's *Shakespeare's Town and Times* (1896) and John Leyland's *Shakespeare Country* (1900) are copiously illustrated books (yet inexpensive) which may be particularly commended for school libraries; and W. S. Brassington's *Shakespeare's Homeland* (1903) deserves similar praise.

For the English historical plays, B. E. Warner's *English History in Shakespeare's Plays* (1894) will be good collateral reading, particularly in secondary schools.

Abbreviations in the Notes. — The abbreviations of the names of Shakespeare's plays will be readily understood; as *T. N.* for *Twelfth Night*, *Cor.* for *Coriolanus*, *3 Hen. VI.* for *The Third Part of King Henry the Sixth*, etc. *P. P.* refers to *The Passionate Pilgrim*; *V. and A.* to *Venus and Adonis*; *L. C.* to *Lover's Complaint*; and *Sonn.* to the *Sonnets*.

Other abbreviations that hardly need explanation are *Cf.* (confer, compare), *Fol.* (following), *Id.* (*idem*, the same), and *Prol.* (prologue). The numbers of the lines in the references (except for the present play) are those of the "Globe" edition (the cheapest and best edition of *Shakespeare* in one compact volume), which is now generally accepted as the standard for line-numbers in works of reference (Schmidt's *Lexicon*, Abbott's *Grammar*, Dowden's *Primer*, the publications of the New Shakspere Society, etc.).

The Story of the Play as told by Holinshed. — The following extracts from Holinshed (which we select from Halliwell-Phillipps's Introduction) contain the more important passages used by the poet in the play: —

A.D. 1413. — "Whilest in the Lent season the king laie at Killingworth, there came to him from Charles Dolphin of France certeine ambassadors, that brought with them a barrell of Paris balles, which from their maister they presented to him for a token

that was taken in verie ill part, as sent in scorne, to signifie that it was more meet for the king to passe the time with such childish exercise, than to attempt any worthie exploit. Wherefore the K. wrote to him that, yer ought long, he would tosse him some London balles that perchance should shake the walles of the best court in France."

A.D. 1414. — "In the second yeare of his reigne, king Henrie called his high court of parlement, the last daie of Aprill, in the towne of Leicester, in which parlement manie profitable lawes were concluded, and manie petitions mooved, were for that time deferred. Amongst which, one was, that a bill exhibited in the parlement holden at Westminster in the eleventh yeare of king Henrie the fourth (which, by reason the king was then troubled with civil discord, came to none effect) might now with good deliberation be pondered, and brought to some good conclusion. The effect of which supplication was, that the temporall lands devoutlie given, and disordinatelie spent by religious, and other spirituall persons, should be seized into the kings hands, sith the same might suffice to mainteine, to the honor of the king, and defense of the realme, fifteene earls, fifteene hundred knights, six thousand and two hundred esquiers, and a hundred almesse-houses, for reliefe onlie of the poore, impotent, and needie persons, and the king to have cleerlie to his coffers twentie thousand pounds, with manie other provisions and values of religious houses, which I passe over.

"This bill was much noted, and more feared among the religious sort, whom suerlie it touched verie neere, and therefore to find remedie against it, they determined to assaie all waies to put by and overthrow this bill; wherein they thought best to trie if they might moove the kings mood with some sharpe invention, that he should not regard the importunate petitions of the commons. Whereupon, on a daie in the parlement, Henrie Chichelie, archbishop of Canturburie, made a pithie oration, wherein he declared, how not onelie the duchies of Normandie and Aquitanie, with the

counties of Anjou and Maine, and the countrie of Gascoigne, were by undoubted title apperteining to the king, as to the lawfull and onelie heire of the same ; but also to the whole realme of France, as heire to his great grandfather king Edward the third.

"Herein did he much inveie against the surmised and false fained law Salike which the Frenchmen alledge ever against the kings of England in barre of their just title to the crowne of France. The verie words of that supposed law are these, *In terram Salicam mulieres ne succedant*, that is to saie, into the Salike land let not women succeed. Which the French glossers expound to be the realme of France, and that this law was made by king Pharamond; whereas yet their owne authors affirme that the land Salike is in Germanie betweene the rivers of Elbe and Sala ; and that when Charles the great had overcome the Saxons, he placed there certeine Frenchmen, which having in disdeine the dishonest maners of the Germane women, made a law, that the females should not succeed to any inheritance within that land, which at this daie is called Meisen, so that, if this be true, this law was not made for the realme of France, nor the Frenchmen possessed the land Salike, till foure hundred and one and twentie yeares after the death of Pharamond, the supposed maker of this Salik law, for this Pharamond deceased in the yeare 426, and Charles the great subdued the Saxons, and placed the Frenchmen in those parts beyond the river of Sala, in the year 805.

"Moreover, it appeareth by their owne writers that king Pepine, which deposed Childerike, claimed the crowne of France, as heire generall, for that he was descended of Blithild, daughter to king Clothair the first: Hugh Capet also, who usurped the crowne upon Charles Duke of Loraine, the sole heire male of the line and stocke of Charles the great, to make his title seeme true, and appeare good, though in deed it was starke naught, conveiede himselfe as heire to the ladie Lingard, daughter to king Charlemaine sonne to Lewes the emperour, that was son to Charles the great. King Lewes also the tenth, otherwise called saint Lewes, being verie heir

to the said usurper Hugh Capet, could never be satisfied in his conscience how he might justlie keepe and possesse the crowne of France, till he was persuaded and fullie instructed that queene Isabell his grandmother was lineallie descended of the ladie Ermengard daughter and heire to the above named Charles duke of Loraine, by the which marriage, the bloud and line of Charles the great was againe united and restored to the crowne and scepter of France, so that more cleeare than the sunne it openlie appeareth that the title of king Pepin, the claime of Hugh Capet, the possession of Lewes, yea and the French kings to this daie, are derived and conveied from the heire female, though they would under the colour of such a fained law, barre the kings and princes of this realme of England of their right and lawfull inheritance.

"The archbishop further alledged out of the booke of Numbers this saieing: 'When a man dieth without a sonne, let the inheritance descend to his daughter.' At length, having said sufficientlie for the proofe of the kings just and lawfull title to the crowne of France, he exhorted him to advance foorth his banner to fight for his right, to conquer his inheritance, to spare neither bloud, sword, nor fire, sith his warre was just, his cause good, and his claime true. And to the intent his loving chapleins and obedient subjects of the spiritualtie might show themselves willing and desirous to aid his majestie, for the recoverie of his ancient right and true inheritance, the archbishop declared that in their spirituall convocation, they had granted to his highnesse such a summe of monie, as never by no spirituall persons was to any prince before those daies given or advanced.

"When the archbishop had ended his prepared tale, Rafe Nevill, earle of Westmerland, and as then lord Warden of the marches against Scotland, understanding that the king, upon a couragious desire to recover his right in France, would suerlie take the wars in hand, thought good to moove the king to begin first with Scotland, and thereupon declared how easie a matter it should be to make a conquest there, and how greatlie the same should further his wished

purpose for the subduing of the Frenchmen, concluding the sum of his tale with this old saying: that *Who so will France win, must with Scotland first begin.* Many matters he touched, as well to show how necessarie the conquest of Scotland should be, as also to proove how just a cause the king had to attempt it; trusting to persuade the king and all other to be of his opinion.

"But after he had made an end, the duke of Excester, uncle to the king, a man well learned and wise, who had beene sent into Italie by his father, intending that he should have been a preest, replied against the erle of Westmerlands oration, affirming rather that he which would Scotland win, he with France must first begin. For if the king might once compasse the conquest of France, Scotland could not long resist; so that conquere France, and Scotland would soon obeie. For where should the Scots lerne policie and skill to defend themselves if they had not their bringing up and training in France. If the French pensions mainteined not the Scottish nobilitie, in what case should they be. Then take awaie France, and the Scots will soon be tamed; France being to Scotland the same that the sap is to the tree, which, being taken awaie, the tree must needs die and wither.

"To be briefe, the duke of Excester used such earnest and pithie persuasions to induce the king and the whole assemblie of the parlement to credit his words, that immediatelie after he had made an end, all the companie beganne to crie, *Warre, warre; France, France.* Hereby the bill for dissolving of religious houses was clearlie set aside, and nothing thought on but onelie the recovering of France, according as the archbishop had moved. . . .

"Immediatelie after, the king sent over into France his uncle the duke of Excester, the lord Greie Admerall of England, the archbishop of Dubline, and the bishop of Norwich, ambassadors unto the French king, with five hundred horsse, which were lodged in the temple house in Paris, keeping such triumphant cheere in their lodging, and such a solemne estate in their riding through in the citie, that the Parisiens and all the Frenchmen had no small mervell

at their honorable port. The French king received them verie honorablie and banketted them right sumptuouslie, shewing to them justs and martiall pastimes, by the space of three days togither, in the which justs the king himselfe, to shew his courage and activitie to the Englishmen, manfullie brake speares and lustilie tournied. When the triumph was ended, the English ambassadors, having a time appointed them to declare their message, admitted to the French kings presence, required of him to deliver unto the king of England the realme and crowne of France, with the entier duchies of Aquiteine, Normandie, and Anjou, with the countries of Poictiou and Maine. Manie other requests they made: and this offered withall, that if the French king would, without warre and effusion of Christian bloud, render to the king their maister his verie right and lawfull inheritance, that he would be content to take in mariage the ladie Katharine, daughter to the French king, and to indow her with all the duchies and countries before rehearsed; and if he would not so doo, then the king of England did expresse and signifie to him, that with the aid of God, and helpe of his people, he would recover his inheritance, wrongfullie withholden from him, with mortall warre, and dint of sword. . . .

"The Frenchmen being not a little abashed at these demands, thought not to make anie absolute answer in so weightie a cause, till they had further breathed; and therefore praied the English ambassadors to saie to the king their maister, that they now having no opportunitie to conclude in so high a matter, would shortlie send ambassadors into England, which should certifie and declare to the king their whole mind, purpose, and intent. The English ambassadors returned with this answer, making relation of everie thing that was said or doone. King Henrie, after the returne of his ambassadors, determined fullie to make warre in France, conceiving a good and perfect hope to have fortunate successe, sith victorie for the most part followeth where right leadeth, being advanced forward by justice, and set foorth by equitie." . . .

A.D. 1415. — "When king Henrie had fullie furnished his navie

with men, munition, and other provisions, perceiving that his capteines misliked nothing so much as delaie, determined his souldiors to go a shipboord and awaie. But see the hap, the night before the daie appointed for their departure, he was crediblie informed, that Richard earle of Cambridge, brother to Edward duke of York, and Henrie lord Scroope of Masham, lord treasuror, with Thomas Graie, a knight of Northumberland, being confederat togither, had conspired his death; wherefore he caused them to be apprehended. The said lord Scroope was in such favour with the king, that he admitted him sometime to be his bed-fellow, in whose fidelitie the king reposed such trust, that when anie privat or publike councell was in hand, this lord had much in the determination of it. For he represented so great gravitie in his countenance, such modestie in behaviour, and so vertuous zeale to all godlinesse in his talke, that whatsoever he said was thought for the most part necessarie to be doone and followed. Also the said sir Thomas Greie (as some write) was of the kings privie councell.

"These prisoners upon their examination, confessed, that for a great summe of monie which they had received of the French king, they intended verelie either to have delivered the king alive into the hands of his enimies, or else to have murthered him before he should have arrived in the duchie of Normandie. When king Henrie had heard all things opened, which he desired to know, he caused all his nobilitie to come before his presence, before whome he caused to be brought the offendors also, and to them said. Having thus conspired the death and destruction of me, which am the head of the realme and governour of the people, it maie be (no doubt) but that you likewise have sworne the confusion of all that are here with me, and also the desolation of your owne countrie. To what horror (O Lord) for any true English hart to consider, that such an execrable iniquitie should ever so bewrap you, as for pleasing of a forren enimie to imbrue your hands in your bloud, and to ruine your owne native soile. Revenge herein touching my person, though I seeke not; yet for the safegard of you, my deere

freends, and for due preservation of all sorts, I am by office to cause example to be shewed. Get ye hence, therefore, ye poore miserable wretches, to the receiving of your just reward, wherein Gods majestie give you grace of his mercie and repentance of your henious offenses. And so immediatelie they were had to execution. . . . Diverse write that Richard earl of Cambridge did not conspire with the lord Scroope and Thomas Graie for the murthering of king Henrie to please the French king withall, but onelie to the intent to exalt to the crowne his brother in law Edmund earle of March as heire to Lionell duke of Clarence: after the death of which earle of March, . . . the earle of Cambridge was sure that the crowne should come to him by his wife, and to his children, of hir begotten. And therefore (as was thought) he rather confessed himselfe for need of monie to be corrupted by the French king, than he would declare his inward mind, and open his verie intent and secret purpose. . . .

"But now to proceed with king Henries dooings. After this, when the wind came about prosperous to his purpose, he caused the mariners to weie up anchors, and hoise up sailes, and set to forward with a thousand ships, on the vigil of our ladie daie the Assumption, and tooke land at Caur, commonlie called Kideaux, where the river Saine runneth into the sea, without resistance. . . . The French king being advertised that king Henrie was arrived on that coast, sent in all haste the lord de la Breth constable of France, the seneshall of France, the lord Bouciqualt marshall of France, the seneshall of Henault, the lord Lignie, with other, which fortified townes with men, victuals, and artillerie, on all those frontiers towards the sea. And hearing that Harflue was besieged, they came to the castell of Caudebecke, being not farre from Harflue, to the intent they might succour their freends which were besieged, by some policie or meanes; but the Englishmen, notwithstanding all the damage that the Frenchmen could worke against them, foraied the countrie, spoiled the villages, bringing manie a rich preie to the campe before Harflue. And dailie was the towne assaulted; for the duke of

Glocester, to whome the order of the siege was committed, made three mines under the ground, and approching to the wals with his engins and ordinance, would not suffer them within to take anie rest. For although they with their countermining somewhat disappointed the Englishmen, and came to fight with them hand to hand within the mines, so that they went no further forward with that worke; yet they were so inclosed on ech side, as well by water as land, that succour they saw could none come to them. . . .

"The capteins within the towne, perceiving that they were not able long to resist the continuall assaults of the Englishmen, knowing that their wals were undermined, and like to be overthrowne (as one of their bulwarks was alredie, where the earles of Huntington and Kent had set up their banners) sent an officer at arms foorth about midnight after the feast daie of saint Lambert, which fell that yeare upon the tuesdaie, to beseech the king of England to appoint some certeine persons as commissioners from him, with whome they within might treat about some agreement. The duke of Clarence, to whome this messenger first declared his errand, advertised the king of their request, who granting thereto, appointed the duke of Excester with the lord Fitz Hugh, and sir Thomas Erpingham, to understand their minds, who at the first requested a truce untill sundaie next following the feast of saint Michaell, in which meane time, if no succour came to remoove the siege, they would undertake to deliver the towne into the kings hands, their lives and goods saved. The king advertised hereof, sent them word, that except they would surrender the towne to him the morrow next insuing, without anie condition, they should spend no more in talke about the matter. . . .

"The king, nevertheless was after content to grant a respit upon certeine conditions, that the capteins within might have time to send to the French king for succour (as before ye have heard) lest he intending greater exploits, might lose time in such small matters. When this composition was agreed upon, the lord Bacquevill was sent unto the French king, to declare in what point the towne

stood. To whome the Dolphin answered, that the kings power was not yet assembled in such number as was convenient to raise so great a siege. This answer being brought unto the capteins within the towne, they rendered it up to the king of England, after that the third daie was expired. . . . All this done, the king ordeined capteine to the towne his uncle the Duke of Excester, who established his lieutenant there, one sir John Fastolfe, with fifteene hundred men, or (as some have) two thousand and thirtie six knights, whereof the baron of Carew, and sir Hugh Lutterell, were two councellors. . . .

"King Henree, after the winning of Harflue, determined to have proceeded further in the winning of other townes and fortresses; but because the dead time of the winter approched, it was determined by advise of his councell, that he should in all convenient speed set forward, and march through the countrie towards Calis by land, least his returne as then homewards should of slanderous toongs be named a running awaie; and yet that journie was adjudged perillous, by reason that the number of his people was much minished by the flix and other fevers, which sore vexed and brought to death above fifteene hundred persons of the armie; and this was the cause that his returne was the sooner appointed and concluded. . . .

"At length the king approached the river of Some, and finding all the bridges broken, he came to the passage of Blanchetake, where his great grandfather king Edward the third a little before had stricken the battell of Cressie; but the passage was now so impeached with stakes in the botome of the foord, that he could not passe, his enimies besides there awaie so swarming on all sides. He therefore marched forwards to Arames, marching with his armie, and passing with his carriage in so martial a maner, that he appeared so terrible to his enimies, as they durst not offer him battell. And yet the lord Dalbreth constable of France, the marshall Boncequault, the earl of Vendosme great master of France, the duke of Alanson, and the earle of Richmont, with all the puissance of the

Dolphin laie at Abuile, but ever kept the passages, and coasted aloofe, like a hauke though eager yet not hardie on her preie. The king of England kept on his journie till he came to the bridge of saint Maxence, where he found above thirtie thousand Frenchmen, and there pitched his field, looking suerlie to be fought withall. . . .

"The king the same daie found a shallow, between Corbie and Peron, which never was espied before, at which he with his army and carriages the night insuing, passed the water of Some without let or danger, and therewith determined to make haste towards Calis, and not to seeke for battell, except he were thereto constreined, because that his armie by sicknesse was sore diminished, in so much that he had but onelie two thousand horssemen, and thirteen thousande archers, bilmen, and of all sorts of other footmen.

"The Englishmen were brought into some distresse in this jornie, by reason of their vittels in maner spent, and no hope to get more; for the enimies had destroied all the corne before they came. Rest could they none take, for their enimies with alarmes did ever so infest them; dailie it rained, and nightlie it freesed; of fuell there was great scarsitie, of fluxes plentie; monie inough, but wares for their releefe to bestow it on, had they none. Yet in this great necessitie, the poor people of the countrie were not spoiled, nor anie thing taken of them without paiment, nor anie outrage or offense done by the Englishmen, except one, which was, that a souldiour tooke a pix out of a church, for which he was apprehended, and the king not once remooved till the box was restored, and the offendoor strangled. The people of the countries thereabout, hearing of such zeale in him to the maintenance of justice, ministred to his armie victuals, and other necessaries, although by open proclamation so to doo they were prohibited.

"The French king being at Rone, and hearing that king Henrie was passed the river of Some, was much displeased therewith, and assembling his councell, to the number of five and thirtie, asked their advise what was to be done. There was amongst these five and

thirtie, his sonne the Dolphin, calling himselfe king of Sicill; the dukes of Berrie and Britaine, the earl of Pontieu the kings yoongest sonne, and other high estates. At length thirtie of them agreed that the Englishmen should not depart unfought withall, and five were of a contrarie opinion, but the greater number ruled the matter; and so Montjoy king at armes was sent to the king of England to defie him as the enimie of France, and to tell him that he should shortlie have battell. King Henrie advisedlie answered: Mine intent is to doo as it pleaseth God, I will not seeke your maister at this time; but if he or his seeke me, I will meet with them God willing. If anie of your nation attempt once to stop me in my journie now towards Calis, at their jeopardie be it; and yet wish I not anie of you so unadvised, as to be the occasion that I die your tawnie ground with your red bloud. When he had thus answered the herald, he gave him a princelie reward, and licence to depart. Upon whose returne, with this answer, it was incontinentlie on the French side proclaimed, that all men of warre should resort to the constable to fight with the king of England. Whereupon, all men apt for armor and desirous of honour, drew them toward the field. The Dolphin sore desired to have beene at the battell, but he was prohibited by his father; likewise Philip earle of Charolois would gladlie have beene there, if his father the duke of Burgognie would have suffered him: manie of his men stale awaie, and went to the Frenchmen. The king of England hearing that the Frenchmen approched, and that there was an other river for him to passe with his armie by a bridge, and doubting least if the same bridge should be broken, it would be greatlie to his hinderance, appointed certeine capteins with their bands, to go thither with all speed before him, and to take possession thereof, and so to keepe it, till his comming thither. . . .

"The cheefe leaders of the French host were these: the constable of France, the marshall, the admerall, the lord Rambures maister of the crosbowes, and other of the French nobilitie, which came and pitched downe their standards and banners in the countie

of saint Paule, within the territorie of Agincourt, having in their armie (as some write) to the number of threescore thousand horssemen, besides footmen, wagoners and other. They were lodged even in the waie by the which the Englishmen must needs passe towards Calis, and all that night after their comming thither made great cheare and were verie merie, pleasant, and full of game. The Englishmen also for their parts were of good comfort, and nothing abashed of the matter, and yet they were both hungrie, wearie, sore travelled, and vexed with manie cold diseases. Howbeit, reconciling themselves with God by hoosell and shrift, requiring assistance at his hands that is the onelie giver of victorie, they determined rather to die, than to yeeld, or flee. The daie following was the five and twentieth of October in the year 1415, being then fridaie, and the feast of Crispine and Crispinian, a day faire and fortunate to the English, but most sorrowfull and unluckie to the French. . . .

"When he had thus ordered his battels, he left a small companie to keepe his campe and cariage, which remained still in the village, and then calling his capteins and soldiers about him, he made to them a right grave oration, mooving them to plaie the men, whereby to obteine a glorious victorie, as there was hope certeine they should, the rather if they would but remember the just cause for which they fought, and whome they should incounter, such faint-harted people as their ancestors had so often overcome. To conclude, manie words of courage he uttered, to stirre them to doo manfullie, assuring them that England should never be charged with his ransome, nor anie Frenchman triumph over him as a captive: for either by famous death or glorious victorie would he (by Gods grace) win honour and fame.

"It is said that as he heard one of the host utter his wish to another thus: I would to God there were with us now so manie good soldiers as are at this houre within England! the king answered: I would not wish a man more here than I have; we are indeed in comparison to the enimies but a few, but if God of his clemencie doo favour us, and our just cause (as I trust he will) we

shall speed well inough. But let no man ascribe victorie to our owne strength and might, but onelie to Gods assistance, to whome I have no doubt we shall worthilie have cause to give thanks therefore. And if so be that for our offenses sakes we shall be delivered into the hands of our enimies, the lesse number we be, the lesse damage shall the realme of England susteine; but if we should fight in trust of multitude of men, and so get the victorie (our minds being prone to pride), we should thereupon peradventure ascribe the victorie not so much to the gift of God, as to our owne puissance, and thereby provoke his high indignation and displeasure against us; and if the enimie get the upper hand, then should our realme and countrie suffer more damage and stand in further danger. But be you of comfort, and show your selves valiant, God and our just quarrell shall defend us, and deliver these our proud adversaries with all the multitude of them which you see, (or at least the most of them), into our hands. . . . The Frenchmen in the meane while, as though they had beene sure of victorie, made great triumph, for the capteins had determined before how to divide the spoile, and the soldiers the night before had plaid the Englishmen at dice. The noble men had devised a chariot, wherein they might triumphantlie convcie the king captive to the citie of Paris, crieing to their soldiers; Haste you to the spoile, glorie, and honor; little weening (God wot) how soone their brags should be blowne awaie.

"Here we maie not forget how the French thus in their jolitie, sent a herald to king Henrie, to inquire what ransome he would offer. Whereunto he answered, that within two or three houres he hoped it would so happen, that the Frenchmen should be glad to common rather with the Englishmen for their ransoms, than the English to take thought for their deliverance, promising for his owne part, that his dead carcasse should rather be a prize to the Frenchmen, than his living bodie should paie anie ransome. When the messenger was come backe to the French host, the men of warre put on their helmets, and caused their trumpets to blow to the battell. They thought themselves so sure of victorie, that diverse

of the noble men made such hast towards the battell, that they left manie of their servants and men of warre behind them, and some of them would not once staie for their standards; as amongst other the duke of Brabant, when his standard was not come, caused a baner to be taken from a trumpet and fastened to a speare, the which he commanded to be borne before him insteed of his standard. . . .

"And so about foure of the clocke in the after noone, the king, when he saw no appearance of enimies, caused the retreit to be blowen; and gathering his armie togither, gave thanks to almightie God for so happie a victorie, causing his prelats and chapleins to sing this psalm, *In exitu Israel da Aegypto*, and commanded everie man to kneele downe on the grounde at this verse: *non nobis Domine, non nobis, sed nomini tuo da gloriam.* Which doone, he caused *Te Deum*, with certeine anthems to be soong, giving laud and praise to God, without boasting of his owne force or anie humane power. That night he and his people tooke rest, and refreshed themselves with such victuals as they found in the French campe, but lodged in the same village where he laie the night before.

"In the morning Montjoie king at armes and foure other French heralds came to the K. to know the number of prisoners, and to desire buriall for the dead. Before he made them answer (to understand what they would saie) he demanded of them whie they made to him that request, considering that he knew not whether the victorie was his or theirs. When Montjoie by true and just confession had cleered that doubt to the high praise of the king, he desired of Montjoie to understand the name of the castell neere adjoining: when they had told him it was called Agincourt, he said, Then shall this conflict be called the battell of Agincourt.[1] . . .

[1] Agincourt, or Azincour, is about twenty miles south of Saint-Omer, a station on the railway from Calais to Paris. Of the "castell neere adjoining" only the foundations now remain. The hottest of the fight raged between Azincour and the neighbouring commune of Tramme-

"It was no marvell though this battell was lamentable to the French nation, for in it were taken and slaine the flower of all the nobilitie of France. There were taken prisoners, Charles duke of Orleance, nephue to the French king, John duke of Burbon, the lord Bouciqualt one of the marshals of France (he after died in England) with a number of other lords, knights, and esquiers, at the least fifteene hundred, besides the common people. There were slaine in all of the French part to the number of ten thousand men, whereof were princes and noble men bearing baners one hundred twentie and six; to these, of knights, esquiers, and gentlemen, so manie as made up the number of eight thousand and foure hundred (of the which five hundred were dubbed knights the night before the battell) so as of the meaner sort, not past sixteene hundred. Amongst those of the nobilitie that were slaine, these were the cheefest, Charles lord de la Breth high constable of France, Jaques of Chatilon lord of Dampier admerall of France, the Lord Rambures master of the crossebowes, sir Guischard Dolphin great master of France, John duke of Alanson, Anthonie duke of Brabant brother to the duke of Burgognie, Edward duke of Bar, the earle of Nevers an other brother to the duke of Burgognie, with the erles of Marle, Vaudemont, Grandpree, Roussie, Fauconberge, Fois and Lestrake, beside a great number of lords and barons of name. Of Englishmen, there died at this battell, Edward duke of Yorke, the earle of Suffolke, sir Richard Kikelie, and Davie Gamme esquier, and of all other not above five and twentie persons, as some doo report. . . .

"The king, like a grave and sober personage, and as one remembering from whom all victories are sent, seemed little to

cour, where a wood still exists corresponding to that in which Henry is said to have posted his archers, who contributed so much to the victory.

The battle-field of Crécy (see ii. 4. 54) is only about twenty miles from that of Agincourt, being some twelve miles from Abbeville, on the route from Boulogne to Paris. The windmill from which Edward III. watched the battle is still standing.

regard such vaine pompe and shewes as were in triumphant sort devised for his welcomming home from so prosperous a journie, in so much that he would not suffer his helmet to be caried with him, whereby might have appeared to the people the blowes and dints that were to be seene in the same; neither would he suffer anie ditties to be made and soong by minstrels of his glorious victorie; for that he would wholie have the praise and thanks altogither given to God." . . .

A.D. 1420. — "Whilest these victorious exploits were thus happilie atchived by the Englishmen, and that the king laie still at Rone, in giving thanks to almightie God for the same, there came to him eftsoones ambassadours from the French king and the duke of Burgognie to moove him to peace. The king minding not to be reputed for a destroier of the countrie, which he coveted to preserve, or for a causer of Christian bloud still to be spilt in his quarrell, began so to incline and give ear unto their sute and humble request, that at length (after often sending to and fro) and that the bishop of Arras and other men of honor had beene with him, and likewise the earle of Warwike, and the bishop of Rochester had beene with the duke of Burgognie, they both finallie agreed upon certeine articles, so that the French king and his commons would thereto assent. Now was the French king and the queene with their daughter Katharine at Trois in Champaigne governed and ordered by them, which so much favoured the duke of Burgognie, that they would not, for anie earthlie good, once hinder or pull backe one jot of such articles as the same duke should seeke to preferre. And therefore what needeth manie words, a truce tripartite was accorded betweene the two kings and the duke, and their countries, and order taken that the king of England should send in the companie of the duke of Burgognie his ambassadours into Trois in Champaigne, sufficientlie authorized to treat and conclude of so great a matter. The king of England, being in good hope that all his affaires should take good successe as he could wish or desire, sent to the duke of

Burgognie his uncle, the duke of Excester, the earle of Salisburie, the bishop of Elie, the Lord Fanhope, the lord Fitz Hugh, sir John Robsert, and sir Philip Hall, with diverse doctors, to the number of five hundred horsse, which in the companie of the duke of Burgognie came to the citie of Trois the eleventh of March. The king, the queene, and the ladie Katharine them received, and hartilie welcomed, shewing great signes and tokens of love and amitie. After a few daies they fell to councell, in which at length it was concluded that king Henrie of England should come to Trois, and marie the ladie Katharine; and the king hir father after his death should make him heire of his realme, crown and dignitie. . . .

"King Henrie being informed by them of that which they had doone, was well content with the agreement, and with all diligence prepared to go unto Trois. . . . The duke of Burgognie accompanied with many noble men, received him two leagues without the towne, and conveied him to his lodging. All his armie was lodged in small villages thereabout. And after that he had reposed himselfe a little, he went to visit the French king, the queene, and the ladie Katharine, whome he found in saint Peters church, where was a verie joious meeting betwixt them (and this was on the twentith daie of Maie) and there the king of England, and the ladie Katharine were affianced."[1]

[1] Saint Peter's Church, or the Cathedral of Troyes, was begun in the early part of the 13th century, the choir being completed about A.D. 1250. The nave was added in the beginning of the 14th century; and the west front, which was never completed, was begun in 1506. The interior has been admirably restored in our day. The windows retain much of their fine original glass.

The marriage of Henry and Katherine took place on the 2d of June, 1420, not in the cathedral where they had been affianced, but in the Church of Saint John, which was built in the 14th century. It is still standing, though in a comparatively ruinous condition. Within the church is a well which furnishes water to the people of that quarter of the city.

PROLOGUE

In the folio the play is divided into acts, but not into scenes, though act i is headed "*Actus Primus, Scæna Prima.*" The heading to the Prologue is "Enter Prologue"; but see line 32: "Admit me *Chorus*," etc. The other prologues have "*Enter Chorus.*"

1, 2. Warburton sees here an allusion to the Peripatetic system with its several heavens, "the highest of which was one of fire;" but, as Douce remarks, the poet "simply wishes for poetic fire and a due proportion of inventive genius." *Invention* is metrically a quadrisyllable. This extra syllable occurs often in the present play.

7. *Leash'd in like hounds*, etc. Cf. *J. C.* iii. 1. 273: "let slip the dogs of war;" and 1 *Hen. VI.* iv. 2. 10: —

> "You tempt the fury of my three attendants,
> Lean famine, quartering steel, and climbing fire."

Holinshed says that Henry V. declared to the people of Rouen "that the goddesse of battell, called Bellona, had three handmaidens, ever of necessitie attending upon her, as blood, fire, and famine."

9. *Flat unraised spirit.* "Opposed to the Muse of fire," etc. (Schmidt).

12. *Vasty.* Cf. *M. of V.* ii. 7. 41: "the vasty wilds of wide Arabia," etc. See also ii. 2. 123 and ii. 4. 105 below.

13. *This wooden O.* The Globe theatre (see cut, p. 9). It was *wooden*, having been largely built with the materials of the Theatre, Burbage's old playhouse on the other side of the river. Cf. *A and C.* v. 2. 81: "The little O, the earth," etc. *The very casques* = the actual casques, or helmets. On the passage, cf. Sidney, *Apologie for Poetrie:* "two armies fly in, represented with four swords and bucklers," etc.

16. *Attest.* "Serve as a certificate for" (Schmidt); stand for.

18. *Imaginary.* Imaginative. Cf. *Sonn.* 27. 9 : "my soul's imaginary sight," etc.

22. *Perilous.* Steevens would make this an adverb (= very), as in Beaumont and Fletcher, *Humorous Lieutenant* : "She is perilous crafty," etc. ; but it is clearly an adjective. The *narrow ocean* is the English Channel. Cf. *M. of V.* ii. 8. 28 : "the narrow seas that part the French and English."

25. *Puissance.* Army ; as in ii. 2. 190 below. Cf. *K. John*, iii. 1. 339 : "draw our puissance together." S. makes the word a dissyllable or a trisyllable, as suits the measure. Cf. iii. prol. 21 below, and 2 *Hen. IV.* ii. 3. 52. *Puissant* is always a dissyllable ; as in i. 2. 116, 119, etc.

30. *Accomplishment.* Work, performance ; as in *R. of L.* 716. S. uses the word only twice.

31. *The which.* Not uncommon in S. ; but *the who* is never found, and *the whom* only in *W. T.* iv. 4. 539.

Scene I. — The *Archbishop of Canterbury* was Henry Chicheley, a Carthusian monk, recently promoted to that see ; the *Bishop of Ely* was John Fordham, consecrated in 1388. It appears from Hall and Holinshed (see p. 167 above) that the business of this scene was transacted at Leicester, where the king held a parliament in the second year of his reign ; but the chorus at the beginning of the next act shows that the poet intended to make London the place of his first scene.

1. *Self.* Selfsame. Cf. *C. of E.* v. 1. 10 : "that self chain," etc.

3. *Was like.* Was likely to pass. The ellipsis, though not allowable now, is not rare in Elizabethan literature.

4. *Scambling.* Scrambling, turbulent. Cf. v. 2. 212 below. See also *Much Ado*, v. 1. 94 and *K. John*, iv. 3. 146.

5. *Question.* Debate, consideration. Cf. ii. 4. 17 below.

15. *Lazars.* Diseased beggars, lepers. Cf. *T. and C.* ii. 3. 36, v. 1. 72, etc.

16. *Corporal.* Corporeal. Cf. *Macb.* i. 3. 81. S. does not use

either *corporeal* or *incorporeal*. He has *incorporal* once (*Ham.* iii. 4. 118).

26. *Mortified.* Killed. Cf. *Macb.* v. 2. 5 : "the mortified man," etc.

28. *Consideration*, etc. "As paradise, when sin and Adam were driven out by the angel, became the habitation of celestial spirits, so the king's heart, since *consideration* has driven out his follies, is now the receptacle of wisdom and of virtue" (Johnson).

33. *In a flood.* Alluding, as Johnson thinks, to the cleansing of the Augean stables by Hercules, who turned a river through them.

34. *Currance.* Current (compare *concurrence*, *occurrence*, etc.); used by S. only here. The later folios substitute "currant" or "current."

35. *Nor never.* The double negative was good Elizabethan English.

36. *All at once.* Cf. *A. Y. L.* iii. 5. 36 :

> "Who might be your mother,
> That you insult, exult, and all at once,
> Over the wretched?"

It was a trite phrase in the time of S.

47. *That, when he speaks*, etc. *So* is often thus omitted before *that.*

48. *The air*, etc. Cf. *A. Y. L.* ii. 7. 48 : —

> "I must have liberty
> Withal, as large a charter as the wind,
> To blow on whom I please."

51. *Practic.* Practical; used by S. nowhere else. *Theoric* (= theory) occurs in *1. H. IV.* iv. 3. 162 and *Oth.* i. 1. 24. The meaning of the passage, as Johnson remarks, is "that his theory must have been taught by art and practice; which, says he, is strange, since he could see little of the true art or practice among his loose companions, nor ever retired to digest his practice into theory."

54. *Addiction.* Inclination ; as in *Oth.* ii. 2. 7 : "to what sport and revels his addiction leads him."

55. *Companies.* Companions. Cf. *M. N. D.* i. 1. 219.

59. *Popularity.* "Vulgarity" (Schmidt) ; or "plebeian intercourse" (Steevens). So in the only other instance in which S. uses the word, 1 *Hen. IV.* iii. 2. 69 : "Enfeoff'd himself to popularity."

60. *The strawberry grows*, etc. It was a common opinion in the time of S. that plants growing together imbibed each other's qualities. Sweet flowers were planted near fruit trees with the idea of improving the flavour of the fruit, while ill-smelling plants were carefully cleared away lest the fruit should be tainted by them. But the strawberry was supposed to be an exception to the rule, and not to be corrupted by the "evil communications" of its neighbours. St. Francis de Sales says : "In tilling our garden we cannot but admire the fresh innocence and purity of the strawberry, because although it creeps along the ground, and is continually crushed by serpents, lizards, and other venomous reptiles, yet it does not imbibe the slightest impression of poison, or the smallest malignant quality — a true sign that it has no affinity with poison ;" and again : "In this manner you may remain innocent amidst the hissing of serpents, and, as a little strawberry, you will not suffer contamination from slimy things creeping near you."

63. *Contemplation.* His serious or thoughtful nature.

66. *Crescive in his faculty.* "Increasing in its proper power" (Johnson). S. uses *crescive* nowhere else ; but he has *crescent* in the same sense in *Ham.* i. 3. 11, *A. and C.* ii. 1. 10, and *Cymb.* i. 4. 2. Steevens quotes Drant's *Horace's Art of Poetry*, 1567 : "As lusty youths of crescive age doe flourishe freshe and grow." *His* = *its ;* as very often before *its* came into general use.

73. *Swaying*, etc. Inclining our way.

74. *Exhibiters.* Those who introduce a bill in parliament. Cf. the verb *exhibit* in *M. W.* ii. 1. 29 : "exhibit a bill in parliament."

76. *Upon.* Used temporally, or perhaps = in pursuance of the decrees passed there (Schmidt).

81. *Withal.* Therewith; as often. Cf. i. 2. 216, etc.

86. *Severals* is explained by Abbott as "details." It is opposed to "generals" in *T. and C.* i. 3. 180: "Severals and generals of grace exact." In *W. T.* i. 2. 226 ("some severals Of head-piece extraordinary") it is = individuals. *Unhidden* = open, clear. "The *passages* of his *titles* are the *lines* of *succession* by which his claims descend" (Johnson).

SCENE II. — 2. *Good uncle.* Thomas Beaufort, Earl of Dorset, who was half-brother to King Henry IV., being one of the sons of John of Gaunt by Katharine Swynford. He was not made Duke of Exeter until after the battle of Agincourt, Nov. 14, 1416. He was not at the battle, having remained in charge of Harfleur after it was taken. See iii. 3. 51 fol.

4. *Be resolv'd.* Be satisfied. Cf. *J. C.* iii. 1. 131, iii. 2. 183, iv. 2. 14, etc. *Westmoreland* was the Ralph Neville of the preceding plays. He was *cousin* of the king by marriage with a daughter of John of Gaunt, half-sister of Henry IV.

11. *The law Salique.* See the extract from Holinshed, p. 168 above.

14. *Bow.* Bend, warp.

15. *Or nicely charge*, etc. "Take heed, lest by nice and subtle sophistry you burthen your knowing soul, or *knowingly burthen your soul*, with the guilt of advancing a false title, or of maintaining, by specious fallacies, a claim which, if shown in its native or true colours, would appear to be false" (Johnson).

16. *Miscreate.* Illegitimate. For the form, cf. *articulate* in 1 *Hen. IV.* v. 1. 72; *create* in *M. N. D.* v. 1. 412, etc.

19. *Approbation.* Proving, establishing. Cf. *T. N.* iii. 4. 198: "more approbation than ever proof itself would have earned him;" *Cymb.* i. 4. 134: "on the approbation of what I have spoke," etc. The word has five syllables here.

21. *Impawn.* Pledge, engage. The meaning appears to be, Take care how you commit us to a policy involving such serious consequences.

32. *As sin*, etc. That is, as *sin* (or a sinful nature) is washed by baptism.

35. *There is no bar*, etc. How closely this speech follows Holinshed will be seen by comparing it with the chronicle, p. 168 fol. above.

40. *Gloze.* Also spelled *glose.* It means to explain, though generally with the added idea of sophistry. Cf. *T. and C.* ii. 2. 165 : "Have gloz'd but superficially ; " *Rich. II.* ii. 1. 10 : "whom youth and ease have taught to gloze," etc.

46. *Charles the Great.* That is, Charlemagne. *Charlemain* in 75 is Charles the Bald, who also assumed the title of Magnus, or Great.

57. *Four hundred one and twenty years.* No commentator has called attention to the error in subtracting 426 from 805, which leaves 379, not 421. S. follows Holinshed, who appears to have taken 405 from 826.

65. *Which.* Who ; as often.

72. *To fine his title.* The reading of the quarto of 1608 ; the folio has "To find his title," which some editors retain, as = trace out or determine. To *fine*, as Steevens remarks, is "to make showy or specious."

74. *Convey'd himself as heir.* Managed to be considered the heir. *Convey* often means "to do or manage with secrecy" (Schmidt); also to steal or obtain fraudulently.

The Lady Lingare. Apparently a fictitious person. Holinshed has "Lingard."

77. *The Tenth.* It should be *the Ninth*, as some modern eds. give it; but S. wrote *the Tenth*, copying the error from Holinshed (see p. 168).

79. *Conscience.* Metrically a trisyllable.

82. *Lineal of.* Directly descended from.

88. *King Lewis his.* This use of *his* was an old mistaken form of the possessive.

93. *Them.* The reflexive use of personal pronouns was common.

94. *Imbar.* Bar in, secure. The quarto has "imbace"; the folio, "imbarre." Some read "imbare" = lay open, expose to view.

98. *In the book of Numbers.* See *Numbers* xxvii. 8.

99. *When the man dies.* That is, without a son. The reading is that of the folio; the quarto has "the sonne," which is followed by some modern eds.

101. *Bloody flag.* The signal of defiance. Cf. *J. C.* v. i. 14: "Their bloody sign of battle is hung out."

103. *Great-grandsire's.* That is, Edward III.

107. *Defeat on.* Cf. *Ham.* ii. 2. 597: —

> "Upon whose property and most dear life
> A damn'd defeat was made."

108. *Whiles.* Often used for *while*. The allusion here is to the battle of Cressy, as described by Holinshed: "The earle of Northampton and others sent to the king, where he stood aloft on a windmill-hill; the king demanded if his sonne were slaine, hurt, or felled to the earth. No, said the knight that brought the message, but he is sore matched. Well, (said the king,) returne to him and them that sent you, and saie to them, that they send no more to me for any adventure that falleth, so long as my son is alive; for I will that this journeye be his, with the honour thereof. The slaughter of the French was great and lamentable at the same battle, fought the 26th August, 1346." Cf. Fluellen's allusion to it in iv. 7. 93 fol. below.

114. *Cold for action.* Malone explains this "cold for *want of* action." Cf. *Macb.* i. 5. 37: "dead for breath;" *Cymb.* iii. 6. 17: "to sink for food." Knight says: "The unemployed forces, seeing the work done to their hands, stood laughing by and indifferent for action — *unmoved to action*." *Action* is a trisyllable here.

118. *Renowned them.* Make them famous. Cf. *T. N.* iii. 3. 24: "that do renown this city."

119. *Runs.* S. often uses the singular inflection with two singular nouns as subject.

126. *So hath*, etc. The *hath* is emphatic; "your highness hath indeed what they think and know you have" (Malone).

132. *The spiritualty.* The clergy; used by S. only here.

137. *Lay down our proportions.* Assign the proper number of troops. Cf. 304 below, also ii. 4. 45.

138. *Make road.* Make a raid; as in *Cor.* iii. 1. 5. See also 1 *Samuel* xxvii. 10.

139. *Advantages.* This may mean opportunities (cf. iii. 6. 123), or "conditions favourable to success," as Schmidt gives it.

140. *Marches.* Borders, border country. Cf. 3 *Hen. VI.* ii. 1. 140: 'For in the marches here we heard you were."

142. *Inland.* The quarto has "England," which tends to prove that the "copy" for that ed. was obtained by taking notes of the acted play. Such "mistakes of the ear" are found elsewhere in the quartos.

143. *Coursing snatchers.* Raiding freebooters. S. uses *snatchers* only here.

144. *Intendment.* Intention. Cf. *V. and A.* 222 and *A. Y. L.* i. 1. 140.

145. *Still.* Always; as often. *Giddy* = excitable. Cf. 2 *Hen. IV.* iv. 5. 214: —

> "Be it thy course to busy giddy minds
> With foreign quarrels."

Some make it = untrustworthy.

150. *Brim fulness.* Virtually one word (as Schmidt gives it), though the preceding words compel us to print it as two.

151. *Gleaned.* Exhausted, laid bare (Schmidt), or, perhaps, drained of soldiers. *Assays* = attacks, incursions.

153. *That.* So that. See on i. 1. 47 above.

154. *At the ill neighbourhood.* The folio reading; the quarto has "at the bruit thereof."

155. *Fear'd.* Frightened. Cf. *M. of V.* ii. 1. 9: —

"this aspect of mine
Hath fear'd the valiant;"

T. of S. i. 2. 211: "Tush! tush! fear boys with bugs," etc.

161. *King of Scots.* King David II., who was taken prisoner by Queen Philippa, at the battle of Neville's Cross, in October, 1346.

163. *Chronicle.* "The similitude between the chronicle and the sea consists only in this, that they are both full, and filled with something valuable" (Johnson).

165. *Sumless.* Inestimable; used by S. only here. The quarto has "shiplesse treasurie."

166. *But there 's a saying,* etc. The folio gives this speech to the Bishop of Ely, but it appears from Holinshed that it belongs to the Earl of Westmoreland. As Warburton remarks, it is absurd to make one of the churchmen push on the king to war with France.

167. *France.* Metrically a dissyllable, according to Abbott.

173. *Tear.* The quarto has "spoile," and the folio "tame." The emendation is Rowe's, and is generally adopted.

175. *Curst.* The quarto reading; the folio has "crush'd," which some explain as "forced, strained"; others as "overborne" (by other reasons). *Curst* = "perverse, froward" (Walker), or "sharp, bitter" (White).

176. *Safeguard.* Also used as a verb in *Rich. II.* i. 2. 35: "to safeguard thine own life."

177. *Pretty.* Used colloquially in a diminutive sense (Schmidt). Cf. *A. and C.* v. 2. 243, etc.

178. *While that.* *That* is often thus used as "a conjunctional affix."

179. *Advised.* Heedful, wary. Cf. *M. of V.* i. 1. 142: "with more advised watch," etc.

182. *Congreeing.* Agreeing; used by S. only here. *Close* = cadence.

184. *In.* Into; as often. Cf. 210 below. *Functions* is a trisyllable.

185. *Setting endeavour*, etc. "The sense is, that all endeavour is to terminate in obedience, to be subordinate to the public good and general design of government" (Johnson).

189. *The act of order.* Malone explains this as "the *law* or *statute* of order;" but it probably means orderly action.

190. *They have a king*, etc. Malone cites a long passage from Lyly's *Euphues and his England*, which S. may have had in mind. Knight remarks: "This is probable; but, nevertheless, the lines before us are a remarkable instance of the power of S. in the improvement of everything he borrowed. It is not only in the poetic elevation of the description that the improvement consists, but in the rejection of whatever is false or redundant." *Sorts* = different kinds, or degrees.

191. *Correct.* Set things right; not elsewhere used absolutely by S.

192. *Venture trade.* Johnson compares the phrase "hazard battle."

194. *Make boot upon.* Seek booty in, plunder. Cf. 2 *Hen. VI.* iv. 1. 13: "Make boot of this." In *A. and C.* iv. 1. 9, "make boot of" = take advantage of.

199. *Civil.* "Well-governed, peaceful" (Schmidt).

202. *Sad-eyed.* Sober-looking. For *sad* = grave, serious, cf. *J. C.* i. 2. 213, etc.

203. *Executors.* Executioners; here accented on the penult. Elsewhere it has the modern accent; as in *Rich. II.* iii. 2. 148, etc.

212. *End.* Here the quarto enables us to correct the misprint "And" of the folio.

220. *Hardiness.* Bravery; as in *Cymb.* iii. 6. 22: —

> "Plenty and peace breeds cowards; hardness ever
> Of hardiness is mother."

S. uses the word only twice. *Policy* = "the art of managing public affairs" (Schmidt); as in i. 1. 45 and ii. prol. 14, etc.

221. *Dauphin.* The folio has here, as elsewhere, "Dolphin." It is also Holinshed's form.

226. *Empery.* Empire, dominion; as in *T. A.* i. 1. 19, 22, 201. It is used in the concrete sense (=country under a prince) in *Rich. III.* iii. 7. 136 and *Cymb.* i. 6. 120.

233. *Waxen.* The folio reading; the quarto has "paper." Either = easily effaced. *Worshipp'd* = honoured; and the passage means "a grave without any inscription, not even the meanest and most fugitive."

239. *Or shall we*, etc. That is, shall we spare your feelings and state our message indirectly? Cf. *Rich. III.* iii. 5. 93 :—

> "But touch this sparingly, as 't were far off;
> Because you know, my lord, my mother lives."

245. *In few.* In few words, in brief. Cf. *Temp.* i. 2. 144, *M. for M.* iii. 1. 237, *Ham.* i. 3. 126, etc.

252. *Galliard.* A lively French dance. Cf. *T. N.* i. 3. 127 : "What is thy excellence in a galliard, knight?" Sir John Davies, in his *Orchestra*, describes the dance thus :—

> "But, for more divers and more pleasing show,
> A swift and wandring daunce she did invent,
> With passages uncertaine, to and fro,
> Yet with a certaine answere and consent
> To the quicke musicke of the instrument.
> Five was the number of the musicks feet,
> Which still the daunce did with five paces meet.
>
> "A gallant daunce, that lively doth bewray
> A spirit, and a vertue masculine,
> Impatient that her house on earth should stay,
> Since she herselfe is fiery and divine:
> Oft doth she make her body upward fline;
> With lofty turnes and capriols in the ayre,
> Which with the lusty tunes accordeth faire."

Halliwell-Phillipps quotes *Lanquettes Chronicle:* "About this time [1541] a new trade of daunsyng galiardes upon five paces, and vaunting of horses, was brought into the realme by Italians, which shortly was exercised commonly of all yonge men, and the old facion lefte."

255. *Tun.* Probably a keg, as Herford suggests. *In lieu of* = in consideration of; as elsewhere in S.

258. *Tennis-balls.* In the old play of *The Famous Victories of Henry the Fifth* (see p. 10) this present consists of a gilded tun of tennis-balls and a carpet. The answer of King Henry there is as follows: —

> "My lord, prince Dolphin is very pleasant with me.
> But tell him, that instead of balls of leather,
> We will toss him balls of brass and of iron:
> Yea, such balls as never were toss'd in France.
> The proudest tennis-court in France shall rue it."

Cf. Drayton's *Battle of Agincourt:* —

> "I 'll send him balls and rackets if I live;
> That they such racket shall in Paris see,
> When over line with bandies I shall drive,
> As that, before the set be fully done,
> France may perhaps into the hazard run."

261. *Rackets.* The bat still used in the game of tennis. Cf. *2 Hen. IV.* ii. 2. 23.

263. *Shall strike.* The omission of the relative is common.

266. *Chases.* According to Douce, "a *chace*, at tennis, is that spot where a ball falls, beyond which the adversary must strike his ball to gain a point or *chace*." It seems to have been often used in this latter sense of a point gained in the game. Cf. Sidney's *Arcadia*, iii.: "Then Fortune (as if she had made chases enow on the one side of that bloody Tenis-court) went on the other side of the line," etc. Halliwell-Phillipps quotes a dialogue from the *Marow of the French Tongue*, 1625, of which the following is part:

"I have thirty, and a chase. . . . And I, I have two chases — Sir, the last is no chase, but a losse."

267. *Comes o'er us.* Taunts us; or, perhaps, simply = reminds us. Cf. *Oth.* iv. 1. 20: "O, it comes o'er my memory," etc.

269. *This poor seat of England.* The throne. Cf. i. 1. 88 above: "the crown and seat of France." See also *Rich. II.* ii. 1. 120, iii. 2. 119, iv. 1. 218, etc.

270. *Living hence.* Probably = "withdrawing from the court," as Steevens explains it. Cf. 1 *Hen. IV.* iii. 2. 32, where the king says to the prince: —

> "Thy place in council thou hast rudely lost,
> Which by thy younger brother is supplied,
> And art almost an alien to the hearts
> Of all the court and princes of my blood."

See also *Rich. II.* v. 3. 1, where Henry IV. asks: —

> "Can no one tell of my unthrifty son?
> 'T is full three months since I did see him last."

274. *Sail.* For the metaphor, cf. *Sonn.* 86. 1: "Was it the proud full sail of his great verse," etc.

276. *For that*, etc. "To qualify myself for this undertaking, I have descended from my station, and studied the arts of life in a lower character" (Johnson).

282. *Gun-stones.* Cannon-balls were at first made of stone. Steevens quotes Holinshed: "About seaven of the clocke marched forward the light pieces or ordinance, with stone and powder." In the *Brut of England*, it is said that Henry "anone lette make tenes balles for the Dolfin in all the haste that they myght, and they were great gonnestones for the Dolfin to playe with alle. But this game at tenes was too rough for the besieged, when Henry playede at the tenes with his hard gonnestones," etc.

283. *Wasteful.* Wasting, ruinous; as in iii. 1. 14 below. See also *Macb.* ii. 3. 120: "ruin's wasteful entrance," etc.

292. *Venge.* Not "'venge," as often printed. Cf. *vengeance* and *vengeful;* and see *Rich. II.* i. 2. 36, *Lear*, iv. 2. 80, etc.

300. *Happy.* Favourable, propitious; as often. Cf. *Much Ado*, iv. 1. 285, *Rich. II.* i. 3. 276, etc.

304. *Proportions.* See on 137 above.

306. *Reasonable.* Intelligent. Steevens quotes *T. and C.* ii. 2. 44: —

> "if he do set
> The very wings of reason to his heels.

307. *God before.* God *going* before, with God as our guide. Abbott explains it as a case of the preposition transposed. The expression occurs again in iii. 6. 160. Johnson there quotes an old *Dialogue between a Herdsman and a Maiden going on a Pilgrimage to Walsingham*, in which the herdsman takes his leave in these words: "Now, go thy ways, and God before."

309. *Task his thought.* Cf. 6 above: "That task our thoughts."

ACT II

PROLOGUE. — 3. *Thrive.* That is, are doing a good business.

6. *The mirror*, etc. Cf. 1 *Hen. VI.* i. 4. 74: "mirror of all martial men;" *Hen. VIII.* ii. 1. 53: "The mirror of all courtesy," etc.

7. *English Mercuries.* S. has many allusions to the god Mercury. See *L. L. L.* v. 2. 940, *K. John*, iv. 2. 174, 1 *Hen. IV.* iv. 1. 106, *Rich. III.* ii. 1. 88, iv. 3. 55, *Ham.* iii. 4. 58, etc.

8. *For now sits*, etc. Steevens remarks that the idea is taken from the ancient trophies, in which swords were often encircled with naval or mural crowns. For the personification, cf. Milton, *P. L.* vi. 306: —

> "while Expectation stood
> In horror."

Henley says that the image is borrowed from a wood-cut in the 1st ed. of Holinshed.

9. *Hilts.* For its use with reference to a single sword, cf. ii. 1. 52 below; also *J. C.* v. 3. 43, etc.

13. *Preparation.* Metrically five syllables.

16. *Model.* Not implying likeness, but parallel to *little body* in the next line (Vaughan).

19. *Kind.* True to their nature or kinship, or filial. Cf. *M. for M.* iii. 1. 229: "in his love toward her ever most kind and natural;" where it refers to brotherly love.

21. *Hollow bosoms.* False hearts. Cf. *Hen. VIII.* iii. 1. 104: "hollow hearts," etc.

23. *Richard Earl of Cambridge.* Richard de Coninsbury, younger son of Edmund of Langley, Duke of York, and cousin of Henry IV. He was father of Richard Duke of York, who was father of Edward IV.

24. *Henry Lord Scroop.* Son of Sir Stephen Scroop in *Rich. III.* and third husband of Joan Duchess of York, mother-in-law of Richard Earl of Cambridge.

26. *The gilt of France.* The gold of France; the only instance of this sense in S. Steevens quotes *An Alarum for London*, 1602: —

> "To spend the victuals of our citizens,
> Which we can scarcely compass now for gilt."

For the play on *gilt* and *guilt*, cf. 2 *Hen. IV.* iv. 5. 129 and *Mach.* ii. 2. 56.

28. *This grace of kings.* Used in a complimentary sense, like "mirror of all Christian kings" in 6 above. Steevens quotes Chapman's *Homer*: —

> "with her the grace of kings,
> Wise Ithacus, ascended."

31, 32. *Linger your patience*, etc. The folio reads: —

> "Linger your patience on, and wee 'l digest
> Th' abuse of distance; force a play:" etc.

The passage is "evidently corrupt" (Schmidt), and perhaps hopelessly so. *Well*, suggested by Pope, is generally adopted; and

many editors accept his reading of the next line, "The abuse of distance, *while we* force a play." *Digest the abuse of distance* may mean "accept the illusion of distance" (*abuse* being often = deception). Steevens explains *force a play* as "to produce a play by compelling many circumstances into a narrow compass." No emendation or explanation, however, is entirely satisfactory.

34. *Is set.* Has set out.

35. *Gentles.* Gentlefolk. Compare *L. L. L.* iv. 2. 172: "the gentles are at their game." It is usually a vocative, as here. Cf. *L. L. L.* ii. 1. 225, *M. N. D.* v. 1. 128, 436, *M. W.* iii. 2. 92, etc.

38. *The narrow seas.* See on i. prol. 22 above.

40. *We'll not offend,* etc. That is, you shall not suffer from sea-sickness.

41. *Till the king come,* etc. The meaning evidently is that the scene is not to be changed to Southampton until the king makes his appearance; but there seems to be a "confusion of construction." Various emendations have been proposed.

Scene I. — 2. *Lieutenant Bardolph.* Some commentators would make Bardolph a "corporal," and not a "lieutenant"; but, as Knight remarks, they overlook the tone of authority which he uses both to Pistol and Nym. It appears from an old MS. in the British Museum that Wm. Pistail and R. Bardolf were among the cannoneers serving in Normandy in 1435.

3. *Ancient.* Corrupted from *ensign.* In 1 *Hen. IV.* iv. 2. 34 it means the standard.

6. *Smiles.* It is hardly worth our while to explain Nym's talk, but Malone says here: "Perhaps Nym means only to say, I care not whether we are friends at present; however, when time shall serve, we shall be in good humour with each other: but be it as it may."

7. *Wink.* Shut my eyes; as often. Cf. iii. 7. 143 and v. 2. 309 below.

16. *My rest.* My resolve; probably used as in *set up my rest*

(a phrase in gaming), where *rest* = the highest stake one is disposed to venture.

20. *Troth-plight.* Betrothed. It is also an adjective in *W. T.* v. 3. 151: "Is troth-plight to your daughter." In *W. T.* i. 2. 278 it is a noun.

24. *A tired mare.* Steevens quotes Pierce's *Supererogation:* "Silence is a slave in a chain, and patience the common pack-horse of the world."

30. *Tike.* Cur. Cf. *Lear*, iii. 6. 73: "Or bobtail tike."

38. *Drawn.* Cf. *Temp.* ii. 1. 308: "Why are you drawn," etc. *Lady* refers to the Virgin Mary.

43. *Iceland dog.* Steevens quotes *Ram-alley*, 1611: "A baboon, a parrot, and an Izeland dog;" and *Two Wise Men*, etc., 1619: "these Iceland dogs." Fleming, in his *English Dogges*, 1576, mentions "Iseland dogges, curled and rough all over." They were used as lapdogs.

46. *Shog.* Nym's word for *jog:* found in other writers of the time. *Solus* is, of course, the Latin for *alone.*

48. *Mervailous.* The folio reading, probably = "marvellous," which many editors substitute for it.

50. *Perdy.* A corruption of *par Dieu.* Cf. *C. of E.* iv. 4. 74, *Ham.* iii. 2. 305, etc.

53. *I can take.* Perhaps = "I understand you; I know what you are about." Some make it = "take fire."

55. *Barbason.* A demon; also mentioned in *M. W.* ii. 2. 311. "The unmeaning tumour of Pistol's speech very naturally reminds Nym of the sounding nonsense uttered by conjurers" (Steevens).

63. *Exhale.* The commentators are in doubt whether this means "draw your sword" or "die." Either makes sense — if it be necessary to make Pistol speak sense. *Exhale* = "draw out" in *Rich. III.* i. 2. 58.

69. *Tall.* Valiant. It often meant "stout, sturdy, lusty, spirited," etc., but generally in an ironical sense.

72. *Couple a gorge!* The folio reading, which some editors think

it necessary to change to good French, "Coupe la gorge"; though, as we see in iv. 4, Pistol has but a poor smattering of that language.

74. *Hound of Crete.* Malone thinks that here is an insinuation that Nym "thirsted for blood," as the Cretan hounds "appear to have been bloodhounds;" but, as Steevens sagely remarks, "Pistol on the present, as on many other occasions, makes use of words to which he had no determinate meaning."

75. *Spital.* Hospital; as in the London *Spitalfields.* It occurs again in v. 1. 84. *Powdering tub* refers to the treatment of certain diseases by sweating in a heated tub.

77. *The lazar kite,* etc. Steevens quotes Gascoigne, *Dan Bartholomew of Bathe,* 1587: "Nor seldom seene in kites of Cressid's kind;" and Greene, *Card of Fancy,* 1601: "What courtesy is to be found in such kites of Cressid's kind?" Cressida, according to some accounts, became a leper and died in a hospital. For *lazar,* cf. i. 1. 15 above.

100. *Compound.* Agree, come to terms. Cf. iv. 3. 80 and iv. 6. 33 below.

109. *A noble.* A gold coin, worth six shillings and eight pence.

121. *Quotidian tertian.* The dame jumbles together the *quotidian* fever, the paroxysms of which recurred daily, and the *tertian,* in which the period was three days.

127. *Fracted.* Broken. Cf. *T. of A.* ii. 1. 22, "his fracted dates." Strange to say, no critic has attempted to make sense of *corroborate.*

129. *Passes,* etc. To *pass careers* was a phrase in horsemanship = to gallop to and fro. Cf. *M. W.* i. 1. 184.

130. *Lambkins.* Cf. 2 *Hen. IV.* v. 3. 121: "Thy tender lambkin now is king." *Condole* is used by S. only here and in Bottom's blundering talk in *M. N. D.* i. 2. 29, 43.

Scene II. — 1. *Fore.* Not to be printed "'fore," as in many modern eds. S. uses it often.

2. *By and by.* Presently, soon; as often in S. Cf. *V. and A.* 347: —

> "But now her cheek was pale, and by and by
> It flash'd forth fire, as lightning from the sky;"

T. G. of V. i. 3. 85: —

> "The uncertain glory of an April day,
> Which now shows all the beauty of the sun,
> And by and by a cloud takes all away;"

Ham. iii. 2. 391: —

> "*Polonius.* My lord, the queen would speak with you, and presently.
> . . . . . .
> *Hamlet.* Then I will come to my mother by and by," etc.

See also *Matthew* xiii. 21 and *Luke* xxi. 9.

8. *His bedfellow.* S. here follows Holinshed (see p. 172 above). Steevens quotes *A Knack to Know a Knave*, 1594: "Yet, for thou wast once bedfellow to a king," etc.

12. *Sits.* Also used of the wind in *M. of V.* i. 1. 18, *Ham.* i. 3. 56, etc.

15. *Powers.* Forces. S. uses both the singular and the plural in this sense.

18. *In head.* In force. Cf. *Ham.* iv. 5. 101: "in a riotous head," etc.

31. *Create.* For the form, see on *miscreate*, i. 2. 16.

33. *Shall forget*, etc. Perhaps S. had in mind *Psalms*, cxxxvii. 5 (Steevens).

36. *Steeled sinews.* Cf. iv. 1. 298: "steel my soldiers' hearts."

40. *Enlarge.* Set at liberty; as in 57 below and elsewhere.

43. *His more advice.* His thinking better of it. Cf. *M. of V.* iv. 2. 6: "upon more advice" (that is, upon reflection); *M. for M.* v. 1. 469: "after more advice," etc.

44. *Security.* Carelessness, confidence. Cf. *J. C.* ii. 3. 8: "security gives way to conspiracy;" *Macb.* iii. 5. 32: "security Is mortals' chiefest enemy," etc.

46. *By his sufferance.* By tolerating him, or neglecting to punish him. Cf. *Cor.* iii. 1. 24: "Against all noble sufferance," etc.

53. *Heavy orisons.* Weighty petitions, strong pleas. Cf. *Cymb.* i. 3. 32: "to encounter me with orisons," etc.

54. *Proceeding on distemper.* "Committed in the state of drunkenness" (Schmidt). *Distemper* often means mental derangement or excitement — in this case, due to intoxication. Cf. *Oth.* i. 1. 99: "Full of supper and distempering draughts." Steevens quotes Holinshed: "gave him wine and strong drink in such excessive sort, that he was therewith distempered and reeled as he went."

55. *How shall we*, etc. "If we may not *wink* at small faults, *how wide must we open our eyes* at great?" (Johnson).

61. *Late.* Lately appointed; as in ii. 4. 31 below it means lately sent.

63. *For it.* That is, for my commission.

74. *Paper.* That is, white as paper. Cf. 2 *Hen. IV.* v. 4. 12: "paper-faced villain;" and *Macb.* v. 3. 16: "those linen cheeks of thine."

75. *Cowarded.* Not elsewhere used by S. as a verb.

79. *Quick.* Living. Cf. *Ham.* v. 1. 137: "'t is for the dead, not for the quick," etc. See also *Acts*, x. 42, 2 *Timothy*, iv. 1, *Hebrews*, iv. 12, etc.

87. *Appertinents.* Used by S. as a noun only here. We have the adjective in *L. L. L.* i. 2. 17 and 2 *Hen. IV.* i. 2. 194.

90. *Practices.* Plots; as often.

91. *Hampton.* Southampton; as in iii. prol. 4 below.

95. *Ingrateful.* Used by S. oftener than *ungrateful.*

98. *Coin'd me into gold.* Cf. *J. C.* iv. 3. 72: —

> "By heaven, I had rather coin my heart,
> And drop my blood for drachmas," etc.

102. *Annoy.* Harm. The word was often used in a much stronger sense than now. Cf. *Rich. III.* v. 3. 156: "the boar's annoy," etc.

103. *Stands off*, etc. Stands out as distinctly, etc.

106. *Either's*. Each other's. Cf. *Temp.* i. 2. 450: "They are both in either's powers," etc.

107. *Grossly*. "Palpably; with a plain and visible connection of cause and effect" (Johnson).

108. *That admiration*, etc. That they excited no exclamation of surprise. Cf. *A. Y. L.* iii. 2. 203: "wonderful, and after that, out of all whooping!"

113. *Voice*. Verdict, judgment. Cf. *M. of V.* iv. 1. 356: "'gainst all other voice," etc.

114. *Suggest*. Tempt; as often.

115. *Damnation*. A quadrisyllable here, like *prevention* in 158 below.

117. *Glistering*. S. does not use *glisten*.

118. *Temper'd*. Fashioned, moulded. Cf. *T. G. of V.* iii. 2. 64, etc.

119. *Instance*. Ground, cause. Cf. *Rich. III.* iii. 2. 25: "Tell him his fears are shallow, wanting instance."

122. *Lion gait*. Cf. 1 *Peter*, v. 8.

123. *Vasty Tartar*. On *vasty*, cf. i. prol. 12 and ii. 4. 105; and on *Tartar* = Tartarus, *T. N.* ii. 5. 225 and *C. of E.* iv. 2. 32.

126. *Jealousy*. Suspicion; as in *Ham.* ii. 1. 113, etc.

127. *Affiance*. Confidence. Cf. *Cymb.* i. 6. 163: "One of the worst consequences of breach of trust is the diminution of that confidence which makes the happiness of life, and the dissemination of suspicion, which is the poison of society" (Johnson). *Show* = appear. Cf. *M. of V.* ii. 2. 193, iv. 1. 196, etc.

134. *In modest complement*. In a corresponding outward appearance. *Complement* = "accomplishments, perfection, completeness; applied sometimes to mental, sometimes to physical attainments, and occasionally, as here, merely to the taste and elegance displayed in dress." Cf. a note of Drayton's upon the *Epistle from Geraldine to Lord Surrey*: "but Apparell and the outward Appearance intituled *Complement*." The modern distinction of *complement*

and *compliment* is not found in the early eds. of S., the former being the only orthography.

135. *Not working*, etc. Not trusting the air or look of any man till he had tried him by inquiry and conversation (Johnson).

136. *And but in purged judgment*, etc. And trusting neither eye nor ear except after careful scrutiny of the reasons for doing so.

137. *Bolted.* Sifted, refined; a metaphor taken from the sifting of flour. Cf. *Cor.* iii. 1. 322: "bolted language."

139. *Full-fraught and best indued.* Most gifted and most richly endowed. For the thought, cf. *Cymb.* iii. 4. 63: —

> "so thou, Posthumus,
> Wilt lay the leaven on all proper men;
> Goodly and gallant shall be false and perjur'd
> From thy great fall."

151. *Discover'd.* Uncovered, disclosed; as often.

157. *What I intended.* "His real aim was to secure the crown to the Earl of March" (Herford).

159. *Which.* As to which. *Sufferance* = suffering; or "death by execution" (Schmidt).

165. *My fault*, etc. Reed quotes the words of Parry, a conspirator against Queen Elizabeth: "Discharge me *a culpa*, but not *a pœna*, good ladie."

169. *Earnest.* Earnest money; a part paid beforehand as a pledge. Cf. *W. T.* iv. 4. 659: "Indeed, I have had earnest; but I cannot with conscience take it," etc.

175. *Tender.* Cherish, take care of. Cf. *Rich. II.* i. 1. 32: "Tendering the precious safety of my prince," etc.

181. *Dear.* Grievous. The word was used in a bad as well as a good sense. Cf. *K. John*, i. 1. 257: "my dear offence;" *Ham.* i. 2. 182: "my dearest foe"; *L. L. L.* v. 2. 801: "dear guiltiness," etc.

183. *Like glorious.* For the adverbial *like*, cf. *Temp.* iii. 3. 66: "like invulnerable," etc.

188. *Rub.* Obstacle, impediment; as in v. 2. 33 below. In

bowling the word denoted any impediment that might divert the ball from its course. Cf. *Cor.* iii. 1. 60 : —

> " nor has Coriolanus
> Deserv'd this so dishonour'd rub, laid falsely
> I' the plain way of his merit."

190. *Puissance.* See on i. prol. 25.

191. *Expedition.* March. Cf. *J. C.* iv. 3. 170: "Bending their expedition toward Philippi," etc.

192. *Cheerly.* Cheerfully, gladly. Cf. *Temp.* i. 1. 6: "Cheerly, cheerly, my hearts!" *Rich. II.* i. 3. 66: "cheerly drawing breath," etc. *The signs of war* = banners. On *advance* (= raise), cf. *L. L. L.* iv. 3. 367: "Advance your standards;" *K. John*, ii. 1. 207: "These flags of France, that are advanced here," etc.

SCENE III. — 1. *Honey-sweet.* Cf. *T. and C.* iii. 1. 71: "honey-sweet lord;" *Id.* iii. 1. 154: "honey-sweet queen." *Bring thee* = accompany thee. Cf. *W. T.* iv. 3. 122: "Shall I bring thee on the way?" See also *Genesis*, xviii. 16 and *Acts*, xxi. 5. *Staines* was nineteen miles from London, on the road to Southampton.

3. *Yearn.* Grieve, mourn. Cf. *J. C.* ii. 2. 129: "The heart of Brutus yearns to think upon," etc.

10. *Arthur's bosom.* Mrs. Quickly is not strong on Scripture.

11. *Finer.* Johnson thought this a blunder for *final*, but it is more likely = *fine*, as others make it.

12. *Christom.* A blunder for *chrisom.* The chrisom was the white vesture put upon the child after baptism, and worn until the mother came to be churched. Blount, in his *Glossography*, 1678, says that *chrisoms* in the bills of mortality are such children as die within the month of birth, because during that time they were to wear the *chrisom cloth.*

13. *The turning o' the tide.* Alluding to the old notion that nobody dies except at the ebb of the tide.

14. *Fumble with the sheets.* This was regarded as a sign of

coming death. Cf. Beaumont and Fletcher, *Spanish Curate*, iv. 5: —

> "A glimmering before death; 't is nothing else, sir;
> Do you see how he fumbles with the sheet?"

16. *But one way.* A euphemism for death, of which many instances occur in writers of the time of S.

17. *A' babbled of green fields.* The folio has "a Table of greene fields." The emendation is Theobald's, and is generally adopted. White calls it "the most felicitous conjectural emendation ever made of Shakespeare's text." It is sustained by the preceding "play with flowers." Various other corrections have been suggested, but they are not worth mentioning.

20. *A' should not think of God.* Malone suggests that S. may have been indebted to the following story in *Wits, Fits, and Fancies*, 1595: "A gentlewoman fearing to be drowned, said, now Jesu receive our soules! Soft, mistress, answered the waterman; I trow, we are not come to that passe yet."

28. *Of sack.* Probably *of* = about; as often. Some make it = against. *Sack* was "the generic name of Spanish and Canary wines" (Schmidt); but sometimes the particular kind was specified. Cf. 2 *Hen. IV.* iv. 3. 104: "a good Sherris-sack;" that is, Sherry wine. Nares quotes the ballad of *Mad Tom:* "a cup of Malaga sack;" and Herrick: —

> "thy isles shall lack
> Grapes, before Herrick leaves Canarie sack."

34. *Carnation.* Mrs. Quickly confounds *incarnate* and *carnation;* but the former was sometimes used for the latter. Henderson quotes *Questions of Love*, 1566: "Yelowe, pale, redde, blue, whyte, graye, and incarnate;" and Reed adds from the *Inventory of the Furniture to be provided for the Reception of the Royal Family, at the Restoration*, 1660: "the rich incarnate velvet bed;" and again: "his majesty's incarnate velvet bed."

37. *A black soul*, etc. Probably suggested by the "lost souls"

in the old religious plays, who were dressed in black, or black and yellow, as the "saved souls" were in white. These plays were performed at Coventry as late as 1580, and S. may have been an eye-witness of the latest of them.

45. *Pitch and Pay.* A proverbial expression of the time. Steevens quotes several examples of it; as from *Blurt Master Constable*, 1602: "Will you pitch and pay, or will your worship run?" Farmer adds from Florio: "Pitch and paie, and go your waie."

47. *Wafer-cakes.* Brittle and easily broken.

48. *Hold-fast*, etc. Alluding to the old proverb, "Brag is a good dog, but hold-fast is a better."

49. *Caveto.* Take care, be cautious (Latin). The quarto has "cophetua."

50. *Clear thy crystals.* Dry thine eyes; though Johnson thought it might better mean "wash thy glasses."

SCENE IV. — 1. *Comes.* The singular form is often used before a plural subject. Here, however, *the English* may be = the English king. Cf. "the French" in iv. 4. 77 below.

2. *More than carefully.* With more than common care.

5. *Make forth.* Go forth. Cf. *J. C.* v. 1. 25: "Make forth; the generals would have some words," etc.

7. *Line.* Strengthen, fortify. Cf. *Mach.* i. 3. 112: "did line the rebel." See also on i. 2. 71 above.

9. *England.* The King of England. Cf. *K. John*, iii. 4. 8: "And bloody England into England gone," etc.

11. *Fits.* Befits, becomes. Cf. *T. G. of V.* i. 1. 81: "A silly answer and fitting well a sheep," etc.

13. *Fatal and neglected.* Fatally neglected, neglected to our destruction.

16. *Dull.* Make inert and careless. Cf. *Oth.* ii. 3. 394: "Dull not device by coldness and delay."

18. *Defences, musters, preparations.* The verbs are given in proper sequence in the next line. Cf. *A. and C.* iv. 15. 25: —

"if knife, drugs, serpents have
Edge, sting, or operation, I am safe;"

where, as in some other instances of this construction, S. does not arrange the corresponding words in the right order. Cf. 106–108 below. *Musters* = levies of troops.

20. *As were.* As *if* there were. The ellipsis is common. *Expectation* is metrically five syllables.

25. *A Whitsun morris-dance.* An ancient dance in which the performers were dressed in grotesque costume, with bells, etc. Cf. *A. W.* ii. 2. 25: "a morris for Mayday;" *W. T.* iv. 4. 134: "Whitsun pastorals," etc.

26. *King'd.* Furnished with a king. In *Rich. II.* v. 5. 36 it is = made a king. Steevens quotes Warner's *Albion's England,* viii. 42: "and king'd his sister's son."

28. *Humorous.* Capricious. In *K. John,* iii. 1. 119 Fortune is called "her humorous ladyship."

31. *Question your grace.* The "optative subjunctive."

34. *In exception.* In taking exception, making objections. Cf. 1 *Hen. IV.* i. 3. 78, *Ham.* v. 2. 242, etc.

35. *Constant.* Firm, unshaken; as in ii. 2. 133 above. Cf. *J. C.* iii. 1. 22: "Cassius, be constant;" *Id.* iii. 1. 60: "constant as the northern star," etc.

36. *Forespent.* Past. In *Cymb.* ii. 3. 64 it is = previously bestowed; and in 2 *Hen. IV.* i. 1. 37, exhausted.

37. *The Roman Brutus,* etc. Malone compares *R. of L.* 1807: —

"Brutus, who pluck'd the knife from Lucrece' side,
Seeing such emulation in their woe,
Began to *clothe his wit* in state and pride,
Burying in Lucrece' wound his *folly's show.*
He with the Romans was esteemed so
As silly-jeering idiots are with kings,
For sportive words and uttering foolish things.

"But now he throws that *shallow habit* by,
Wherein deep policy did him disguise,

And arm'd his long-hid wits advisedly,
To check the tears in Collatinus' eyes."

Boswell remarks that the best commentary on the passage will be found in Prince Henry's soliloquy in 1 *Hen. IV.* i. 2. 219–241.

46. *Projection.* Projecting, plan, calculation. The construction is somewhat confused, but the meaning, as Malone suggests, evidently is, "which proportions of defence, when weakly and niggardly projected, resemble a miser who spoils his coat," etc.

50. *Hath been flesh'd.* Hath preyed; literally, been fed with flesh, or had a taste of blood. Cf. iii. 3. 11 below: "the flesh'd soldier;" and 2 *Hen. IV.* iv. 5. 133: —

"the wild dog
Shall flesh his tooth on every innocent."

For *of him* = his, cf. 64 below.

51. *Strain.* Lineage, race. Cf. *J. C.* v. 1. 39: "the noblest of thy strain;" *T. of A.* i. 1. 259: —

"The strain of man 's bred out
Into baboon and monkey."

54. *Was struck.* Schmidt compares *Cymb.* v. 5. 468: "the stroke of this battle." Steevens quotes the title of one of Sir David Lyndsay's poems: "How King Ninus began the first warres and strake the first battell."

55. *Captiv'd.* S. does not use the verb elsewhere.

57. *His mountain sire.* Apparently = mighty sire; a bold figure, preparing the way for that of the *sun* which follows. Theobald would read "mounting" = high-minded, aspiring. Steevens quotes Spenser, *F. Q.* i. 11. 4: —

"Where stretch't he lay upon the sunny side
Of a great hill, himselfe like a great hill."

As Malone remarks, the repetition of *mountain* is much in the poet's manner.

64. *Fate.* "Great good fortune ordained by destiny" (Schmidt). Cf. *A. and C.* iii. 13. 169: "I will oppose his fate."

70. *Most spend their mouths.* That is, *bark;* the sportsman's term. Cf. *V. and A.* 695 : "Then do they spend their mouths." See also *M. N. D.* iv. 1. 128 and 1 *Hen. VI.* ii. 4. 12.

71. *Good my sovereign.* Like *good my lord*, etc. *Sovereign* is here a trisyllable.

80. *Longs.* Not "'longs," as often printed.

85. *Sinister.* Unfair; always accented by S. on the penult. *Awkward* = perverse.

88. *Line.* Pedigree; as it is called two lines below.

90. *Overlook.* Look over, read. Cf. *Ham.* iv. 6. 13 : "when thou shalt have overlooked this," etc.

91. *Evenly.* Directly, rightly; as opposed to *indirectly* (wrongfully) below. Cf. 1 *Hen. IV.* iii. 1. 103 : "In a new channel, fair and evenly."

95. *Challenger.* Claimant; one who *challenges* another's right.

101. *Requiring.* Demanding.

102. *In the bowels of the Lord.* Holinshed's phrase = by the Divine mercy.

103. *Deliver up . . . and to take.* The *to* is sometimes thus inserted with a second verb after being omitted with the former one. Cf. *Hen. VIII.* ii. 4. 14 : —

> "Sir, I desire you do me right and justice,
> And to bestow your pity on me."

105. *Vasty.* See on ii. 2. 123.

106–108. To make the arrangement of corresponding nouns and verbs more regular, Johnson proposed to read : —

> "Turning the dead man's blood, the widow's tears,
> The orphan's cries, the pining maiden's groans," etc.

But see on 18 above.

124. *Womby.* Hollow; used by S. only here.

125. *Chide your trespass.* That is, sound it abroad, proclaim it aloud. Cf. *Temp.* iii. 3. 99 : "it did bass my trespass." For *chiding* = resounding, cf. *Hen. VIII.* iii. 2. 197 : "the chiding flood."

126. *Ordinance.* Ordnance. Cf. *K. John*, ii. 1. 218, and see extract from Holinshed, p. 174 above. In iii. prol. 26, where the word is a dissyllable, the folio has "Ordenance;" so "Ordinance" in *Ham.* v. 2. 281. But we find "Ordnance" in *T. of S.* i. 2. 204 and 1 *Hen. VI.* i. 4. 15.

132. *Louvre.* According to some writers the ancient palace of the Louvre was built in the 7th century. What is now called the "Old Louvre" was begun in 1528 under Francis I., and completed by Henry II. in 1548.

137. *Masters.* Possesses. Cf. *Sonn.* 106. 8: "Even such a beauty as you master now;" *M. of V.* v. 1. 174: "the wealth That the world masters," etc.

143. *Footed.* Landed. Cf. *Lear*, iii. 3. 14 and iii. 7. 45.

ACT III

PROLOGUE. — 1. *With imagin'd wing.* On the wings of imagination; or with the speed of imagination. Cf. *M. of V.* iii. 4. 52: "with imagin'd speed."

4. *Well-appointed.* Well furnished, well equipped. Cf. 1 *Hen. IV.* i. 1. 190, iv. 1. 25, etc. For *Hampton pier* the folio has "Douer peer," which is an obvious error. See ii. prol. 30, 35, 42.

5. *His royalty.* His majesty. Cf. *L. L. L.* v. 2. 670, *W. T.* i. 2. 15, *K. John*, v. 2. 129, etc.

6. *Fanning.* Cf. *Macb.* i. 2. 49: —

> "Where the Norweyan banners flout the sky
> And fan our people cold."

10. *Threaden.* Cf. *L. C.* 33: "her threaden fillet." S. uses the word only twice.

11. *With.* By; as often.

14. *Rivage.* Bank, shore (Fr. *rivage*); used by S. only here. Cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* iv. 6. 20: —

"The which Pactolus with his waters shere
Throwes forth upon the rivage round about him nere."

17. *Harfleur.* The folio has here, as elsewhere, "Harflew."

18. *To sternage of.* Astern of; explained by *follow.* *Sternage* is used by S. nowhere else. Holinshed has the verb *stern* = steer; and Chapman the noun = rudder.

21. *Puissance.* For the pronunciation, see on i. prol. 25. On *pith* = strength, cf. *Oth.* i. 3. 83 and *Ham.* iii. 1. 86.

30. *To dowry.* For dowry; a common use of *to.*

32. *Likes not.* Pleases not. Cf. iv. 3. 77: "Which likes me better," etc.

33. *Linstock.* "The staff to which the match is fixed when the ordnance is fired" (Johnson). In the stage-direction that follows, *chambers* = small cannon. Cf. 2 *Hen. IV.* ii. 4. 57: "the charged chambers." They were an early kind of breech-loaders, the charge being put in a movable *chamber* which was inserted in the breech. On *devilish cannon*, cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* i. 7. 13: "that divelish yron Engin."

35. *Eke.* In the folio "eech." In *M. of V.* iii. 2. 23, we have "ich." In *Per.* iii. prol. 13, it rhymes with *speech.*

SCENE I. — 8. *Hard-favour'd.* Hard-featured, ill-looking. Cf. *V. and A.* 133: "Were I hard-favour'd, foul, or wrinkled-old," etc.

9. *Aspect.* Always accented on the last syllable by S.

10. *Portage.* Port-hole. The word is used again in *Per.* iii. 1. 35, where its meaning is doubtful.

11. *O'erwhelm.* Lower above. Cf. *V. and A.* 183: "His louring brows o'erwhelming his fair sight," etc.

12. *Galled.* Fretted or worn. Cf. *R. of L.* 1440: "the galled shore."

13. *Jutty.* Project beyond; used by S. as a verb nowhere else. *Confounded* = wasted, wave-worn. Cf. *Temp.* ii. 1. 120: "wave-worn basis."

14. *Swill'd with.* Swallowed by. S. uses *swill* only here and in *Rich. III.* v. 2. 9: —

> "The wretched, bloody, and usurping boar,
> That spoil'd your summer fields and fruitful vines,
> Swills your warm blood," etc.

Ocean is here a dissyllable; as in *M. of V.* i. 1. 8 and 2 *Hen. IV.* iii. 1. 50.

15. *Now set the teeth.* Cf. *Cor.* i. 3. 70 and *A. and C.* iii. 13. 181.

16. *Bend up*, etc. A metaphor from straining up a bow. Cf. *Macb.* i. 7. 79.

18. *Fet.* Fetched. Cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* v. 3. 11: "soone the prisoner fet." The first folio has "fet" in *Rich. III.* ii. 2. 121. "Deep-fet" occurs in 2 *Hen. VI.* ii. 4. 33, and "far-fet" in *Id.* iii. 1. 293. *War proof* = warlike experience.

21. *Argument.* Matter, business in hand. Cf. *T. and C.* i. 1. 95: "I cannot fight upon this argument," etc.

31. *Slips.* Leashes, by which the dogs were held until started for the game. Cf. Gascoigne, *Absent Lady's Complaint:* —

> "The greyhound is aggreev'd, although he see his game,
> If still in slippe he must be stayde, when he would chase the same."

To *let slip* was to loose the hound from the slip. Cf. 1 *Hen. IV.* i. 3. 278: "Before the game 's afoot thou still let'st slip." See also *Cor.* i. 6. 39 and *J. C.* iii. 1. 273.

Scene II. — 4. *A case of lives.* A pair or set of lives; as a *case* of pistols.

6. *Plain-song.* In music "the simple melody, without any variations." Cf. *M. N. D.* iii. 1. 134 and *Hen. VIII.* i. 3. 45.

20. *Preach.* The folio has "breach" here, and elsewhere it is not uniform in marking the peculiarities of Fluellen's pronunciation. None of the modern editors have made this perfectly consistent throughout, and I have not attempted to do it in all cases.

22. *Duke.* Perhaps = commander (Latin *dux*), as Malone explains it. S. uses the word very loosely. Here it is probably a bit of Pistol's peculiar English.

Men of mould. "Men of *earth*, poor mortal men," as Johnson and Schmidt explain it. White understands it to mean men "of large frame, and so of strength, of prowess."

25. *Bawcock.* "A term of endearment (Fr. *beau coq*) synonymous to *chuck*, but always masculine" (Schmidt). Cf. iv. 1. 44 below; also *T. N.* iii. 4. 125 and *W. T.* i. 2. 121.

29. *Swashers.* Braggarts, bullies. Used by S. nowhere else; but we have *swashing* = swaggering, in *A. Y. L.* i. 3. 122 and *R. and J.* i. 1. 70.

31. *Antics.* Buffoons, fools. See *Rich. II.* iii. 2. 162, *T. and C.* v. 3. 86, etc.

32. *White-livered.* Cowardly. Cf. *M. of V.* iii. 2. 86: "livers white as milk;" and *Macb.* v. 3. 15 (also *Lear*, ii. 2. 18): "lily-liver'd."

43. *Call it purchase.* This was the cant term for money got by cheating, as we learn from Greene's *Art of Coneycatching.*

47. To *carry coals* meant "to endure affronts" (Johnson). Cf. *R. and J.* i. 1. 1: "we'll not carry coals." Nares says that the phrase arose from the fact that the carriers of wood and coals were esteemed the very lowest of menials, the *servi servorum.*

49. *Handkerchers.* The folio has "Hand-kerchers" (indicating the pronunciation) here, as in sundry other places; but "Hand-kerchiefe" in *Oth.* iv. 1. 10, 18, 22, etc.

51. *Pocketing up of wrongs.* The same expression occurs in *K. John*, iii. 1. 200.

55. *Fluellen.* An approximation to the Welsh pronunciation of *Llewellyn.*

64. *Plow up.* That is, blow up.

85. *God-den.* Good evening; as in *K. John*, i. 1. 185, *Cor.* ii. 1. 103, etc. A contraction of "God give you good evening" (sometimes "Godgigoden" in the folio).

104. *Quit you.* Requite you, answer you; or, perhaps, "tell you also interesting things" (Schmidt). Cf. *Rich. II.* v. 1. 43: —

"to quit their grief
Tell thou the lamentable tale of me," etc.

115. *By the mess.* That is, by the mass.

119. *Wad full fain hear.* The folio has "heard," which many editors retain. "The omission of *have* is a common Northern and Scandinavian idiom" (Herford); but S. may not have been aware of it. "Captain Jamy is pedantic but not ungrammatical" (Wright).

SCENE III. — 2. *Parle.* Parley. Cf. *Rich. II.* i. 1. 192, *K. John*, ii. 1. 205, etc.

4. *Destruction* has the extra metrical syllable, like *desolation* in 18 and *violation* in 21 below.

10. *The gates of mercy.* Cf. 3 *Hen. VI.* i. 4. 177: "Open thy gate of mercy, gracious Lord!" As Steevens notes, Gray has borrowed the expression in his *Elegy*, 68: "And shut the gates of mercy on mankind."

11. *Flesh'd.* "Fierce, hardened" (Schmidt). Cf. *Rich. III.* iv. 3. 6: "flesh'd villains, bloody dogs." See on ii. 4. 50 above.

14. *Fresh-fair.* The hyphen is not in the folio, and might perhaps as well be omitted.

17, 18. *All fell feats*, etc. All the savage practices attending the sack of cities.

24. *Bootless.* Used adverbially; as in *M. N. D.* ii. 1. 37, *J. C.* iii. 1. 75, etc.

26. *Precepts.* According to Schmidt, the accent is on the first syllable when the word means "instruction, lesson;" on the second when it means "mandate, summons." This is the only case in which the latter sense occurs in verse. We have it in prose in 2 *Hen. IV.* v. 1. 14.

28. *Take pity of.* For the preposition, cf. 45 below.

29. *Whiles.* See on i. 2. 108 above.

31. *O'erblows.* Blows over, or away. Cf. *Rich. II.* iii. 2. 190 : "This ague-fit of fear is overblown ; " *T. of S.* v. 2. 3 : "scapes and perils overblown," etc.

32. *Heady.* Impetuous, precipitate. Cf. i. 1. 34 above ; also 1 *Hen. IV.* ii. 3. 58 and *Lear,* ii. 4. 111.

40. *Jewry.* Judea. Cf. *Rich. II.* ii. 1. 55, etc. See also *John,* vii. 1.

43. *In defence.* That is, in keeping up your resistance.

46. *Returns us.* Sends us back word. Cf. *Rich. II.* iii. 3. 121 : "say thus the king returns," etc. For *powers* = forces, cf. ii. 2. 15 above.

58. *Addrest.* Prepared, ready. Cf. *J. C.* iii. 1. 29 : "He is address'd," etc.

Scene IV. — Warburton considered this scene "ridiculous," and Hanmer rejected it. Johnson says : "The scene is indeed mean enough when it is read ; but the grimaces of two French women, and the odd accent with which they uttered the English, made it divert on the stage. It may be observed that there is in it not only the French language, but the French spirit. Alice compliments the princess upon her knowledge of four words, and tells her that she pronounces like the English themselves. The princess suspects no deficiency in her instructress, nor the instructress in herself. Throughout the whole scene there may be found French servility and French vanity." White remarks : "Shakespeare sought to enliven his History by humour ; and his intention here was to excite mirth by the exhibition of a Frenchwoman in the ridiculous emergency of sudden preparation for amorous conquest of an Englishman. This could best be done by making her attempt to learn his language, in doing which she must of course speak French ; and Shakespeare here, as in the subsequent scene between Pistol and the French soldier, instinctively preserved dramatic propriety at the expense of the mere verbal consistency of his work. That

the scene is Shakespeare's the promise in the epilogue to 2 *Hen. IV.*, that in the continuation of the story the audience shall be made 'merry with fair Katherine of France,' is sufficient evidence, as Tyrwhitt remarked. Shakespeare's design was known to the writer of that epilogue."

54. *De foot et de coun!* These words resemble in sound certain French words which Katherine considers improper in good society; hence her comments on them.

SCENE V. — 1. The folio has here the stage-direction, "*Enter the King of France, the Dolphin, the Constable of France, and others.*" To the speeches beginning with lines 10 and 30 it prefixes "*Brit.*" But the Duke of "Britaine" does not appear elsewhere in the play, and the editors generally follow Theobald in substituting Bourbon. The stage-direction in the quarto is "*Enter King of* France *Lord Constable, the Dolphin, and* Burbon" (given incorrectly in the notes of the Cambridge ed.); and "*Bur.*" is prefixed to the first of these speeches, the second being omitted in the quarto. The Cambridge ed. remarks: "In Holinshed (p. 1077, ed. 1577), the Dukes of Berry and Britaine are mentioned as belonging to the French king's council, and not the Duke of Bourbon. Shakespeare probably first intended to introduce the Duke of Britaine, and then changed his mind but forgot to substitute *Bour.* for *Brit.* before the two speeches."

2. *Withal.* The emphatic form of *with.* Cf. its use (= *therewith*) in i. 1. 81, etc.

5. *A few sprays of us.* Referring to the Norman-French element in the English race.

6. *Luxury.* Lust; the only meaning of the word in S. Cf. *M. W.* v. 5. 98, *Ham.* i. 5. 83, etc.

7. *Savage.* Uncultivated. Cf. *A. Y. L.* ii. 7. 107: "I thought that all things had been savage here."

9. *Overlook.* Look down on, tower above. For a different sense, see ii. 4. 90 above.

12. *But I will.* If I will *not;* as sometimes after an oath.

13. *Slobbery.* Wet and foul. S. uses the word only here; but we find the verb *slubber* in *Oth.* i. 3. 227 and *M. of V.* ii. 8. 39, and *beslubber* in 1 *Hen. IV.* ii. 4. 341.

14. *Nook-shotten.* Probably = shooting out into capes and necks of land. Some make it = "thrust into a corner apart from the rest of the world"—the "penitus toto divisos orbe Britannos" of Virgil.

19. *Sur-rein'd.* Over-ridden. S. uses the word only here. Steevens quotes *Jack Drum's Entertainment*, 1601: "A sur-rein'd jaded wit, but he rubs on." There is an allusion to the custom of giving horses over-ridden or feverish a *mash;* that is, a mixture of ground malt and hot water. Cf. *horse-drench* in *Cor.* ii. 1. 129. *Barley broth* is a contemptuous term for beer.

26. *In their native lords.* "In respect of the poor show which their owners make compared with the English" (Herford).

31. *Lavoltas.* A kind of dance, in which there was much lofty capering. Cf. *T. and C.* iv. 4. 88: "Nor heel the high lavolt." It is thus described by Sir John Davies, in his *Orchestra:*—

"Yet is there one of the most delightful kind,
A lofty jumping, or a leaping round,
Where arm in arm, two dancers are entwin'd,
And whirl themselves in strict embracements bound
And still their feet an anapest do sound:
An anapest is all their musick's song,
Whose first two feet is short, and third is long.

"As the victorious twins of Leda and Jove,
That taught the Spartans dancing on the sands
Of swift Eurotas, dance in heaven above,
Knit and united with eternal hands,
Among the stars their double image stands,
Where both are carried with an equal pace,
Together jumping in their turning race."

The *coranto*, or *corranto* (from the Italian *correre*, Latin *currere*, to run), was also a lively dance. Davies says of it: —

> "What shall I name those *current* traverses,
> That on a triple dactyl foot do run,
> Close by the ground, with sliding passages,
> Wherein that dancer greatest praise hath won
> Which with best order can all order shun:
> For every where he wantonly must range,
> And turn and wind with unexpected change."

Cf. *A. W.* ii. 3. 49: "he 's able to lead her a coranto;" *T. N.* i. 3. 137: "go to church in a galliard, and come home in a coranto."

37. *More sharper*. Double comparatives and superlatives are common in S.

38. *Delabreth*. S. follows Holinshed's spelling of the name, the modern *D'Albret*.

43. *Foix*. Capell's emendation for the "Loys" of the folio. The latter was not the name of any French family of distinction at that time.

45. *Quit you*. Free or clear yourselves. Cf. ii. 2. 166 above; also 2 *Hen. VI.* iii. 2. 218, etc. *Seats* = estates, or signories.

47. *Pennons*. Schmidt thinks that the meanings of wing and flag are here combined.

50. *Void his rheum*. Cf. *M. of V.* i. 3. 118: "did void your rheum upon my beard."

52. *Rouen*. Spelt "Roan" in the early eds., which probably indicates the English pronunciation of the time. Cf. Holinshed's "Rone," p. 176 above.

58. *For achievement*. For the exploit (Schmidt). Malone explains it: "*instead* of achieving a victory over us," which may be right.

Scene VI. — 2. *The bridge*. The reference here is to an historical fact. After Henry had passed the Somme, the French attempted to break down the only bridge over the Ternoise, at

Blangy, and thus cut off his passage to Calais; but Henry, learning their design, sent forward troops who put the French to flight, and guarded the bridge until the English had crossed.

12. *An aunchient.* See on ii. 1. 3, and cf. 30, 50, and 53 below.

26. *Buxom.* "Lively, fresh, brisk" (Schmidt). S. uses the word only here; unless we are to add *Per.* prol. 23: "buxom, blithe, and full of face." Cf. Milton, *L'All.* 24: "buxom, blithe, and debonair." Spenser uses it in the sense of yielding, obedient; as in *F. Q.* i. 11. 37: "the buxome aire;" *Id.* iii. 2. 23: "Of them that to him buxome are and prone."

28. *That goddess blind*, etc. Ritson quotes *The Spanish Tragedy*, 1594: —

"Fortune is blind —
Whose foot is standing on a rolling stone."

31. *Muffler.* Apparently here = a bandage over the eyes. In *M. W.* iv. 2. 73, 81, 205, it means "a wrapper worn by women and covering the face" (Schmidt). For *her eyes* the folio has "his eyes," which Herford retains, because "confusions of gender are constant in Welsh-English."

40. *A pax.* Altered to "pix" by Theobald. Johnson says the two words mean the same, but this is not true. The *pax*, according to Nares, was "a symbol of peace, which, in the ceremony of the mass, was given to be kissed at the time of the offering." In Capt. Stevens's *Spanish Dict.*, we are told that it was the cover of the sacred chalice. The *pix* was the box or shrine in which the consecrated wafers were kept; and the word is still used in the same sense. Cf. Longfellow, *Nuremberg:* "In the church of sainted Lawrence stands a pix of sculpture rare;" and see the author's note on the line. Steevens quotes Stowe's *Chronicle:* "palmes, chalices, crosses, vestments, pixes, paxes, and such like." In the present passage, S. follows Holinshed, who says (see p. 176 above) that "a souldiour tooke a *pix* out of a church," etc.; but, as the two words were often confounded, it does not seem worth while to change the folio reading.

58. *Figo.* The Spanish word for *fig;* often used as a term of contempt. For a full discussion of the origin and various meanings thereof, see Douce's *Illustrations of Shakespeare.* In *The fig of Spain* just below, Steevens sees an allusion to the use of poisoned figs, and quotes several passages in support of that explanation; as from Shirley, *The Brothers,* 1652: "I must poison him; one fig sends him to Erebus;" Ben Jonson, *Every Man in His Humour:* "The lye to a man of my coat is as ominous a fruit as the fico," etc. But the phrase here is probably a mere repetition of the contemptuous *figo.*

65. *See in a summer's day.* Cf. *M. N. D.* i. 2. 75, etc.

72. *Learn you.* This expletive use of *you,* like that of *me, thee, him,* etc., is common in S.

74. *Sconce.* Bulwark. In *C. of E.* ii. 2. 37, it is applied in jest to a covering for the head.

78. *New-tuned.* Cf. *T. G. of V.* iv. 4. 134: "new-found oaths."

A beard of the general's cut. Certain professions and classes seem to have been distinguished by the cut of the beard. Thus we read of the *bishop's beard,* the *judge's,* the *soldier's,* the *citizen's,* etc. Staunton quotes Greene, *Quip for an Upstart Courtier,* 1592: "he [the barber] descends as low as his beard, and asketh whether he please to be shaven or no? whether he will have his peak cut short and sharp, amiable, like an inamorato, or broade pendante, like a spade, to be terrible, like a warrior and soldado?"

82. *Slanders of the age. Slanderers* of the age, because bringing it into disrepute.

89. *From the bridge.* That is, about the bridge.

95. *Passages.* Acts, occurrences. Cf. *T. N.* iii. 2. 77: "such impossible passages of grossness;" *Cymb.* iii. 4. 94: —

> "It is no act of common passage, but
> A strain of rareness," etc.

106. *Bubukles.* "A corrupt word, formed half of *carbuncle,*

half of *bubo*, probably meaning a red pimple" (Schmidt); intended, of course, to be the coinage of Fluellen.

111. *We give express charge*, etc. See Holinshed, p. 176 above.

117. *Habit.* The herald's coat. The person of a herald being inviolable, he was distinguished by a peculiar dress.

122. *Though we seemed dead*, etc. Cf. *M. for M.* ii. 2. 90: "The law hath not been dead, though it hath slept." *Advantage* = favourable opportunity.

126. *Upon our cue.* In our turn, in due time. The metaphorical use of *cue* (as of other terms connected with the stage) is not rare in S. Cf. *Ham.* ii. 2. 587, *Oth.* i. 2. 83, etc.

130. *Proportion.* Be in proportion to, correspond to. *Digested* = put up with; as in *L. L. L.* v. 2. 289: "will digest this harsh indignity," etc.

132. *In weight to re-answer.* Fully to make amends for. Cf. *M. for M.* i. 2. 125: "Make us pay down for our offence by weight."

141. *Quality.* Profession. Cf. *M. W.* v. 5. 44: "your office and your quality," etc.

146. *Impeachment.* Hindrance, impediment (the French *empêchment*). Cf. Holinshed's "impeached" = hindered, p. 175 above. *Sooth* = truth; as often.

148. *Of craft and vantage.* That is, who is cunning, and is besides favoured by circumstances (Schmidt).

160. *God before.* See on i. 2. 307 above.

162. *There's for thy labour*, etc. Cf. Holinshed, p. 177 above. It was customary to reward a herald, whatever might be the character of his message.

171. *Deliver so.* Say so. Cf. *Temp.* ii. 1. 45: "as he most learnedly delivered," etc.

Scene VII.—1. The stage-direction of the folio here is, "*Enter the Constable of France, the Lord Rambures, Orleance, Dolphin, with others.*" The quarto has "*Enter* Burbon, Constable, Orleance,

Gebon;"[1] and it gives to Bourbon the speeches assigned by the folio to the Dauphin, or "Dolphin." It is evident from iii. 5. 62 fol. that the Dauphin was not at the battle; and it has been suggested by Mr. Johnes that either the name of Sir Guichard Dauphin (cf. iv. 8. 99) led S. into the error, or the editors have confounded two persons meant by the poet to be distinct. It is curious that here (as in the substitution of *Bourbon* for *Britaine* in iii. 5, and some other instances pointed out by Mr. P. A. Daniel in his ed. of *Henry V.* published by the New Shakspere Society, 1877), the editor of the quarto appears to have corrected an historical error.

13. *As if his entrails were hairs.* That is, as if he were a tennis-ball, stuffed with hair. Cf. *Much Ado*, iii. 2. 47: "the old ornament of his cheek had already stuffed tennis-balls."

14. *Pegasus.* Cf. 1 *Hen. IV.* iv. 1. 100: "a fiery Pegasus." For *chez* ("ches" in folio) Capell substituted "qui a."

18. *Hermes.* The only instance in which S. calls Mercury by his Greek name. Cf. ii. prol. 7, etc.

21. *The dull elements*, etc. Alluding to the old notion that all things were composed of the four elements, earth, air, fire, and water. Cf. *T. N.* ii. 3. 10: "Does not our life consist of the four elements?" *A. and C.* v. 2. 292:—

> "I am fire and air; my other elements
> I give to baser life."

Fire and air were supposed to preponderate in the higher forms of life, as earth and water in the lower.

25. *Jades.* Warburton wished to transpose *jades* and *beasts*, on the ground that the former, not the latter, was the term of reproach. Knight remarks that *jade* was not always contemptuous, and quotes Ford:—

> "Like high-bred jades upon a tilting day
> In antique trappings."

[1] *Gebon* does not resemble any French name mentioned by the Chronicles in this connection. Possibly, as Mr. Daniel suggests, it was the name of the actor who played the part.

But the word always has a depreciatory meaning in S., and I see no difficulty in explaining it so here. It simply anticipates the contempt expressed in *beasts*.

26. *Absolute.* Faultless, perfect. Cf. *M. for M.* v. 1. 54: "as grave, as just, as absolute As Angelo;" *Ham.* v. 2. 111: "an absolute gentleman," etc. White remarks: "We have lost a very good word in losing *absolute* with its Elizabethan signification, if indeed it be hopelessly gone. It meant something more than *perfect*, or even *unexceptionable*, and was sometimes used to convey the idea that the thing of which it was predicated had standard or authoritative merit."

36. *Argument.* Subject. Cf. 1 *Hen. IV.* ii. 2. 100: "it would be argument for a week," etc.

39. *Familiar to us*, etc. That is, whether familiar to us or unknown; the *whole* world.

49. *Prescript.* Normal; or, perhaps, prescriptive, immemorial. S. uses the adjective only here.

53. *Shrewdly.* "In a high and mischievous degree (quite = the German adverb *arg*)" (Schmidt). Cf. 153 below; also *A. W.* iii. 5. 91, *Ham.* i. 4. 1, etc.

55. *Wears his own hair.* Alluding to the custom of wearing false hair, to which S. had a special aversion. Cf *L. L. L.* iv. 2. 358, *M. of V.* iii. 2. 88 fol., *T. of A.* iv. 3. 144, *Sonn.* 68. 5 fol., etc.

59. *Le chien*, etc. From a French version of the Bible. See 2 *Peter*, ii. 22.

71. *A many.* Now obsolete, though we still say *a few* and *many a* in a distributive sense. Cf. iv. 1. 124 below; also *M. of V.* iii. 5. 73, *Rich. III.* iii. 7. 184, etc. Tennyson uses the expression in *The Miller's Daughter:* "They have not shed a many tears."

82. *Who will go to hazard*, etc. Cf. iv. prol. 19 below.

89. *He will eat all he kills.* Cf. *Much Ado*, i. 1. 43: "how many hath he killed and eaten in these wars? But how many hath he killed? For indeed I promised to eat all of his killing."

110. *But his lackey.* That is, he has beaten nobody but his footboy (Johnson).

'T is a hooded valour, etc. An allusion to the practice of keeping hawks hooded until they were to fly at the game. To *bait* was to flap the wings, as the bird did when unhooded. Here there is a pun on *bait* in this sense and *bate* = abate, diminish.

113. *Cap.* Alluding to the practice of capping verses.

117. *Well placed.* Well put, well said.

118. *Have at*, etc. Cf. *C. of E.* iii. 1. 51: "Have at you with a proverb;" *R. and J.* iv. 5. 125: "have at you with my wit," etc.

121. *A fool's bolt.* A *bolt* was a blunt-headed arrow. Cf. *A. Y. L.* v. 4. 67.

132. *Peevish.* Silly, childish; its ordinary if not its only meaning in S. Cf. *Rich. III.* i. 3. 194, iii. 1. 31, iv. 2. 100, etc. Steevens (in his note on *Cymb.* i. 6. 54) gives many examples of this sense from other old writers. Schmidt does not recognize the modern meaning in his *Lexicon*.

133. *Fat-brained.* Dull, stupid. Cf. *fat-witted* in 1 *Hen. IV.* i. 2. 2.

135. *Apprehension.* Capacity to apprehend, perception, intelligence. Cf. *Ham.* ii. 2. 319: "in apprehension how like a God!"

143. *Winking.* With shut eyes, blindly. Cf. ii. 1. 7 above and v. 2. 309 below.

148. *Sympathize with.* Agree with, resemble; as in 1 *Hen. IV.* v. 1. 7, etc.

149. *Robustious.* Stout, sturdy. Cf. *Ham.* iii. 2. 10: "a robustious periwig-pated fellow." *Robust* does not occur in S.

150. *Give them*, etc. Boswell quotes Otway, *Venice Preserved:* —

> "Give but an Englishman
> Beef, and a sea-coal fire, he 's yours for ever."

153. *Shrewdly.* Badly; as in 53 above. Cf. *Ham.* i. 4. 1: "The air bites shrewdly," etc.

156. *Stomachs.* There is a play upon the word, which often meant courage. Cf. iv. 3. 35 below. See also *Temp.* i. 2. 157, *Ham.* i. 1. 100, etc.

ACT IV

PROLOGUE. — 2. *Poring.* "That is, straining its eyes and yet seeing only the nearest things, purblind" (Schmidt).

3. *Fills.* A singular verb often occurs with two singular subjects.

5. *Stilly.* Softly. Used nowhere else by S. Cf. *M. N. D.* iv. 1. 80 (stage-direction): "Music still." Staunton quotes an account of the baptism of Prince Frederick Henry, 1594: "After which ensued a still noyse of recorders and flutes."

6. *That.* So that; as often. Cf. 41 below. According to Holinshed, the armies were only two hundred and fifty paces from each other.

9. *Battle.* Army; as in iv. 2. 54 below. Cf. *K. John*, iv. ii. 78: "two dreadful battles set," etc. In iv. 3. 69 below, *battles* = battalions; as in *J. C.* v. 1. 4, etc.

Umber'd. Schmidt explains this as "embrowned, darkened;" but it seems better to understand it as referring to the effect of the firelight on their faces. Malone remarks that umber, "mixed with water, produces such a dusky yellow colour as the gleam of fire by night gives to the countenance." Taken in this sense, it is an exceedingly *picturesque* word.

11. *The night's dull ear.* Steevens quotes Milton, *L'All.* 42: "And singing startle the dull night."

12. *Accomplishing.* Furnishing, making complete. According to Douce, *closing rivets up* refers to fastening the bottom of the casque to the top of the cuirass, which was done after both had been put on.

14. *Preparation.* Metrically five syllables.

18, 19. Cf. Holinshed's statement that "the soldiers the night before had plaid the Englishmen at dice" (p. 179 above). *Play*

= play for. *Over-lusty* = "too lively and merry" (Schmidt). Cf. *Lear*, ii. 4. 10: "over-lusty at legs."

26. *Investing.* Attending, accompanying.

28. *Who.* The relative, not the interrogative, referring to *him* in 31.

35. *No note.* Nothing to indicate. Cf. *Much Ado*, iii. 2. 54: "The greatest note of it is his melancholy," etc.

36. *Enrounded.* Surrounded; used by S. only here.

38. *All-watched.* Watched throughout, or spent in watching. S. is fond of compounds with *all-*; like *all-abhorred*, *all-bidding*, *all-dreaded*, *all-hating*, *all-hurting*, *all-licensed*, *all-praised*, etc.

39. *Freshly looks.* Cf. *A. Y. L.* iii. 2. 243: "Looks he as freshly," etc. *Overbears attaint* = represses the anxiety that wears upon him. The king puts on a cheerful look himself, and thus revives the drooping spirits of his soldiers. Cf. Virgil, *Æn.* i. 208: —

> "Talia voce refert, curisque ingentibus aeger,
> Spem vultu simulat, premit altum corde dolorem."

45. *Then, mean and gentle all*, etc. The folio has: —

> "Thawing cold feare, that meane and gentle all
> Behold, as may vnworthinesse define,
> A little touch of *Harry* in the Night,
> And so our Scene," etc.

The text is that of Theobald (adopted by many editors), who says: "As this stood, it was a most perplex'd and nonsensical passage; and could not be intelligible but as I have corrected it. The poet first expatiates on the real influence that Harry's eye had on his camp; and then addressing himself to every degree of his audience, he tells them, he'll shew (as well as his unworthy pen and powers can describe it) a little touch or sketch of this hero in the night; a faint resemblance of that cheerfulness and resolution which this brave prince expressed in himself and inspired in his followers." The Cambridge editors (and some others) retain the folio reading, with some changes in pointing. They understand

mean and gentle to refer to the various ranks of the English army. *That* must then be = *so that;* and *as may unworthiness define* would appear to mean, so far as inferior natures can appreciate it. I prefer Theobald's explanation.

50. *Foils.* Swords used in fencing; here = fencers, or swordsmen.

53. *Minding.* Calling to mind, thinking of.

Scene I. — 3. *Brother Bedford.* He was the Prince John of Lancaster in 1 and 2 *Hen. IV.*, created Earl of Kendal and Duke of Bedford in May, 1414. As he was appointed by Henry V. to be "Lieutenant of the whole realm of England" during his own absence in France, he was not at the battle of Agincourt.

7. *Husbandry.* Thrift, economy. Cf. *T. and C.* i. 2. 7: —

> "And, like as there were husbandry in war,
> Before the sun rose he was harness'd light."

10. *Dress us.* Prepare ourselves. Cf. 1. *Hen. IV.* iii. 2. 51: "And dress'd myself in such humility," etc. Some eds. print it "'dress," as if a contraction of *address:* but the original meaning of *dress* is to put in order, prepare.

16. *Likes me.* Pleases me, suits me. See on iii. prol. 32; and cf. iv. 3. 77.

19. *Upon example.* Because of example.

23. *Casted.* Cast off. Cf. *T. N.* ii. 5. 161: "cast thy humble slough." S. elsewhere uses *cast* for the participle; as in *A. Y. L.* iii. 4. 16, etc. *Slough* = the skin of a snake; as, figuratively, in the passage from *T. N.* just quoted. See also 2 *Hen. VI.* iii. 1. 229. *Legerity* = lightness, alacrity; used by S. only here.

26. *Do my good morrow.* Cf. *J. C.* iv. 2. 5: "To do you salutation," etc.

27. *Desire.* Invite. Cf. *T. and C.* iv. 5. 150: —

> "I would desire
> My famous cousin to our Grecian tents."

Pavilion is a quadrisyllable.

34. *God-a-mercy.* A corruption of "God have mercy;" here, as often = gramercy, thank you (Schmidt). Cf. *K. John*, i. 1. 185, *Ham.* ii. 2. 172, etc.

38. *Popular.* Of the people, plebeian, vulgar. See on i. 1. 59 above; and cf. *Cor.* ii. 1. 230, ii. 3. 109, iii. 1. 106, etc.

40. *Trail'st thou*, etc. Farmer quotes Chapman, *Revenge for Honour:* "Fit for the trayler of the puissant pike."

44. *Bawcock.* See on iii. 2. 25.

45. *Imp.* Youngling. Used only by Armado, Holofernes, and Pistol. Cf. *L. L. L.* i. 2. 5, v. 2. 592, and 2 *Hen. IV.* v. 5. 46. Steevens quotes Holinshed: "his sonne prince Edward, that goodlie impe." Churchyard calls Edward VI. "that impe of grace"; and Fulwell refers to Elizabeth as a "royal impe."

46. *Valiant.* A trisyllable, as in iv. 7. 181 below.

55. *Saint Davy's day.* Saint David's day, the 1st of March; not August 26th, as Schmidt makes it. The later was the date of the battle of Crécy (see on iv. 7. 90 below), which S. has been supposed to regard as Saint David's day. But it is not necessary to connect what Pistol says here, and what Fluellen says in iv. 7. 104, and Gower in v. 1. 2, with the time of this French campaign. The battle of Agincourt occurred on the 25th of October (1415), nowhere near the correct date of Saint Davy's day, or the incorrect one given by Schmidt. Pistol refers to that day because it was then that the Welsh wore the leek, and Fluellen afterward puts the leek in his cap because he means to make Pistol eat it for sneering at it. When Gower says "Saint Davy's day is past," he does not mean that it is recently past; he simply expresses his surprise that Fluellen is wearing the leek at an unusual time.

The origin of this wearing of the leek is doubtful. Shakespeare connects it with the battle of Crécy. Others say that it was in commemoration of a victory of the Welsh over the Saxons in David's own day; and others that it was suggested by the simple diet of the Saint, "whose contented mind made many a favourite meal" on the vegetable.

60. *The figo.* See on iii. 6. 58 above.

63. *Sorts.* Agrees. Cf. *M. N. D.* v. 1. 55: "not sorting with a nuptial ceremony," etc.

66. *Lower.* The quarto of 1600 has "lewer," changed to "lower" in that of 1608; the folio has "fewer," which Steevens was inclined to favour as a provincialism = lower. He adds: "In Sussex I heard one female servant say to another: Speak fewer, or my mistress will hear you."

88. *I think it be.* Cf. *C. of E.* v. 1. 379: "I think it be, sir," etc. The subjunctive is often used after verbs of thinking.

95. *Thomas.* The folio has "John;" corrected by Theobald.

98. *Estate.* State, condition; as often.

105. *Element.* Sky. Cf. *Hen. IV.* iv. 3. 58, *J. C.* i. 3. 128, etc. *Shows* = appears, looks. Cf. ii. 2. 127 above.

106. *Conditions.* Qualities. Cf. *Much Ado*, iii. 2. 68: "his ill conditions," etc.

112. *Possess him*, etc. Cf. 299 below: "Possess them not with fear;" 1 *Hen. IV.* ii. 2. 112: "possess'd with fear," etc.

120. *My conscience.* My judgment, my opinion. Cf. 2 *Hen. VI.* iii. 1. 68: "Shall I speak my conscience?"

124. *A many.* See on iii. 7. 71, and cf. iv. 3. 95 below.

127. *To wish him.* As to wish him.

130. *Quarrel.* Often = cause or motive of quarrel (Schmidt). Cf. *Macb.* iv. 3. 137, etc.

139. *Latter.* Last; as often. Cf. 1 *Hen. IV.* v. 1. 92, 1 *Hen. VI.* ii. 5. 38, *A. and C.* iv. 6. 39, etc.

143. *Rawly.* Without due preparation and provision. Cf. *rawness* in *Macb.* iv. 3. 26. *Afeard* is used by S. interchangeably with *afraid.* Cf. *M. N. D.* iii. 1. 28, *Macb.* i. 7. 39, etc.

145. *When blood is their argument.* When engaged in "bloody business" (*Macb.* ii. 1. 48 and *Oth.* iii. 3. 469). See on iii. 1. 21 above.

148. *Who to disobey. Who = whom;* as often. *All proportion of subjection* = all "reasonable service."

151. *Miscarry upon the sea.* Be lost at sea. Cf. *M. for M.* iii. 1. 217: "who miscarried at sea;" *M. of V.* ii. 8. 29: "there miscarried a vessel of our country," etc. *Sinfully* = in his sins.

153. *Imposed upon.* Laid upon, charged against.

166. *Contrived murther.* Plotted, preconcerted murder. Cf. *Oth.* i. 2. 3: "To do no contrived murther."

171. *Native.* In their own country. Cf. iv. 3. 96 below: "native graves."

174. *Before-breach.* For the "adverbial compound," cf. "back-return" in v. prol. 41 below. Some eds. print "now-the-king's-quarrel" in the present passage.

177. *Unprovided.* Unprepared for death.

184. *Dying so. He* dying so; if he die so.

204. *An elder-gun.* A pop-gun, made of elder wood. The tree is mentioned in *L. L. L.* v. 2. 010, *T. A.* ii. 3. 272, 277, etc.

206. *Go about.* Attempt, undertake. Cf. *M. N. D.* iv. 1. 212, *Much Ado*, i. 3. 12, iv. 1. 65, iv. 2. 28, etc.

207. *With.* By; as often.

209. *Round.* Plain-spoken, blunt. Cf. *T. N.* ii. 3, 102: "I must be round with you;" *Lear*, i. 4. 58: "he answered me in the roundest manner," etc.

223. *Take thee a box on the ear.* Cf. iv. 7. 118 below; also *M. for M.* ii. 1. 180, *T. of S.* iii. 2. 165, *T. N.* ii. 5. 75, etc.

235. *French crowns.* A *French crown* was a common expression for a bald head (cf. *M. for M.* i. 2. 52, *M. N. D.* i. 2. 99, *A. W.* ii. 2. 23, etc.); but the pun here may turn simply on the double meaning of *crown. To cut French crowns* is an allusion to the crime of clipping coin.

240. *Careful.* Full of care, anxious. Cf. *Rich. II.* ii. 2. 75: "careful business;" *C. of E.* v. 1. 298: "careful hours," etc.

242. *Condition.* A quadrisyllable. Cf. *adoration* (five syllables) in 254 and *adulation* in 263 below.

245. *Wringing.* Suffering. Cf. *Much Ado*, v. 1. 28: "To those that wring under the load of sorrow."

254. *Thy soul of adoration.* The soul of thy adoration, the essential nature which men adore in thee.

269. *Balm.* The anointing-oil used in the coronation ceremony. Cf. *Rich. II.* iii. 2. 55, iv. 1. 207, 2 *Hen. IV.* iv. 5. 115. See also *Hen. VIII.* iv. 1. 88. On *ball*, cf. *Mach.* iv. 1. 121, and *emballing* in *Hen. VIII.* ii. 3. 47.

271. *The intertissued robe*, etc. The robe interwoven with gold and pearls.

272. *The farced title*, etc. "The extended or swollen title prefixed to *the king*, as for example, *His Most Gracious Majesty*, the king." For *fore*, see on ii. 2. 1 above.

279. *Distressful.* Earned by painful labour.

282. *In the eye of Phœbus.* In the heat of the sun.

284. *Helps Hyperion to his horse.* Is up before the sun.

289. *Had the fore-hand*, etc. Would have the advantage of a king.

291. *Wots.* Knows. Used only in the present tense and the participle *wotting*. Cf. *M. N. D.* iv. 1. 161, etc. *Wots what watch* would hardly be tolerated by modern rhetoric.

293. *The peasant best advantages.* Most benefit the peasant. For the verb, cf. *Temp.* i. 1. 34: "our own doth little advantage." See also *V. and A.* 950, *J. C.* iii. 1. 242, etc. The singular verb is a "confusion of construction," due to the intervening *peasant;* or, perhaps, as Herford suggests, "to the notion of *peace*, the real source of the benefit."

300. *If.* The folio has "of;" the emendation is Tyrwhitt's. The Cambridge editors suggest that a line may have been lost, which with the help of the quarto they supply as follows: —

> "Take from them now
> The sense of reckoning of the opposed numbers,
> Lest that the multitudes which stand before them
> Pluck their hearts from them."

303. *Compassing.* Obtaining. Cf. *T. G. of V.* ii. 4. 214: "to compass her I 'll use my skill," etc.

304. *Interred new.* The body, according to Holinshed, having been removed from Langley to Westminster "with all funeral dignity."

310. *Chantries.* One of these monasteries was for Carthusian monks, and was called *Bethlehem;* the other was for men and women of the order of Saint Bridget, and was named *Sion.* They were on opposite sides of the Thames, near the royal manor of Sheen, now called Richmond.

311. *Still.* Continually; as very often. Cf. i. 2. 145 above.

312–314. *Though all,* etc. Johnson explains the passage thus: "I do all this, says the King, though all that I can do is nothing worth, is so far from an adequate expiation of the crime, that penitence comes after all, imploring pardon both for the crime and the expiation." Heath's explanation is perhaps to be preferred: "I am sensible that everything of this kind (works of piety and charity) which I have done or can do, will avail nothing towards the remission of this sin; since I well know that, after all this is done, true repentance, and imploring pardon, are previously and indispensably necessary towards my obtaining it."

SCENE II. — 4. *Via,* etc. Begone "the dull elements of earth and water!" Cf. iii. 7. 22 above.

5. *Rien puis? l'air,* etc. "Can you add nothing more? Is he not air and fire? Yes, says the Dauphin, and even heaven itself" (Malone). Herford explains thus: "Water and fire I will go through"; to which Orleans replies ironically, "Anything further? Air and fire?" "Ay, and heaven, cousin Orleans." But cf. iii. 7. 21 fol. above.

11. *Dout.* Do out, put out. Cf. *Ham.* iv. 7. 192: "this folly douts it," etc.

14. *Embattled.* In battle array. Cf. *K. John,* iv. 2. 200: "embattled and ranked," etc. It is used intransitively in *A. and C.* iv. 1. 93: —

> "and they say we shall embattle
> By the second hour i' the morn."

17. *Suck away their souls.* Steevens quotes Dryden, *Don Sebastian:* "Sucking each other's souls while we expire," and Pope, *Eloisa to Abelard:* "Suck my last breath, and catch my flying soul."

18. *Shales.* Shells; used by S. nowhere else.

21. *Curtle-axe.* Cutlass. Cf. *A. Y. L.* i. 3. 119: "A gallant curtle-axe upon my thigh."

28. *Squares.* Squadrons. Cf. *A. and C.* iii. 11. 40: "the brave squares of war."

29. *Hilding.* Properly a noun = a base menial. Cf. *T. of S.* ii. 1. 26: "For shame, thou hilding," etc. It is used again as an adjective in 2 *Hen. IV.* i. 1. 57: "He was some hilding fellow."

31. *Idle speculation.* Inactive looking-on.

32. *What 's to say.* Cf. *T. N.* iii. 3. 18: "What 's to do?"

35. *Tucket sonance.* A *tucket* was a flourish on a trumpet. *Sonance* = sound. Cf. Heywood, *Rape of Lucrece*, 1630: "to hear their sonance."

36. *Dare the field.* "He uses terms of the field as if they were going out only to the chase for sport. To *dare the field* is a phrase in falconry. Birds are dared when by the falcon in the air they are terrified from rising, so that they will be sometimes taken by the hand. Such an easy capture the lords expected to make of the English" (Johnson). Cf. *Hen. VIII.* iii. 2. 282: "dare us with his cap like larks."

39. *Desperate of their bones.* Cf. *Oth.* ii. 3. 337: "I am desperate of my fortunes."

40. *Ill-favouredly become.* Poorly become, or adorn.

41. *Their ragged curtains.* Their tattered banners.

44. *Beaver.* The visor of a helmet. Cf. 2 *Hen. IV.* iv. 1. 120: "their beavers down;" *Ham.* i. 2. 230: "he wore his beaver up."

45. *Like fixed candlesticks.* "Grandpré alludes to the form of ancient candlesticks, which frequently represented human figures holding the sockets for the lights in their extended hands" (Steevens). Cf. *Vittoria Corombona*, 1612: "he showed like a

pewter candlestick, fashioned like a man in armour, holding a tilting staff in his hand little bigger than a candle."

47. *Lob down.* Hang down, droop; the only instance of the verb in S.

49. *Gimmal bit.* A bit made of rings or links. Cf. *Edward III.* i. 2: "Nor lay aside their jacks of gymold mail." *Gimmaled mail* was armour composed of links like those of a chain. Malone quotes Minsheu, *Dict.*, 1619: "A gimmal or gemmow from the Gal. *gemeau*, Lat. *gemellus*, double, or twinnes, because they be rings with two or more links."

56. *Prayers.* A dissyllable.

60. *Guidon.* The folio has "guard; on," etc. The emendation is found in Rann's ed., and is generally adopted. It is favoured by what follows; but the folio reading is defended by Malone, who considers that "*guard* means here nothing more than the *men of war* whose duty it was to attend on the Constable of France, and among those his *standard*, that is, his standard-bearer."

62. *For.* Because of; as often.

63. *Outwear.* Are wearing away, wasting. Cf. *V. and A.* 841; "Her song was tedious and outwore the night;" *L. L. L.* ii. 1. 23: "Till painful study shall outwear three years," etc. S. uses the word only of the lapse of time.

SCENE III. — *Enter Gloucester*, etc. Neither *Salisbury* nor *Westmoreland* was present at the battle. For *Bedford*, see on iv. 1. 3 above.

2. *Is rode.* Has ridden. S. uses *rid* and *rode* as the participle in the active voice, *ridden* in the passive.

10. *Kinsman.* Westmoreland.

13. *Mind.* Remind. Cf. 84 below.

15. *As full of valour*, etc. Cf. *Rich. II.* v. 5. 114: "As full of valour as of royal blood."

16. *O that we now*, etc. Cf. extract from Holinshed, p. 178 above. It was really Sir Walter Hungerford who expressed the

wish that they had with them ten thousand of the best English archers (Wright).

18. *What 's he*, etc. *What = who;* as often.

20. *Enow.* The old plural of *enough.*

21. *To do our country loss.* Cf. *T. of S.* v. 2. 179: "do him ease;" *T. N.* v. 1. 136: "to do you rest;" *R. of L.* 597: "to do him shame," etc.

24. *By Jove.* "The king prays like a Christian, and swears like a heathen" (Johnson).

26. *It yearns.* It grieves. Cf. *M. W.* iii. 5. 45: "it would yearn your heart to see it." We have had the word used intransitively in ii. 3. 3, 6 above.

35. *That he*, etc. Another "confusion of construction."

37. *Convoy.* Travelling expenses.

40. *The feast of Crispian.* The 25th of October, Saint Crispin's day. Crispin and Crispian were brothers, born in Rome; whence they travelled to Soissons, France, about A.D. 303, to propagate the Christian religion. They supported themselves by working at their trade of shoemaking; but the governor of the town, learning that they were Christians, caused them to be beheaded. They subsequently became the tutelar saints of the shoemakers.

44. *He that shall live*, etc. The folio reads: "He that shall see this day, and liue old age." The transposition was made by Pope, and is favoured by the quarto reading, "He that outlives this day and sees old age."

45. *The vigil.* The evening before the festival.

48. *And say*, etc. This line, omitted in the folio, is restored from the quarto.

50. *With advantages. Advantage* sometimes means interest upon money; as in *M. of V.* i. 3. 71 and 1 *Hen. IV.* ii. 4. 599. Here it is used metaphorically in the same sense; as in *K. John*, iii. 3. 22: "And with advantage means to pay thy love."

53. *Bedford and Exeter*, etc. Of the persons named, Exeter and Gloucester were the only ones present at Agincourt.

63. *Gentle his condition.* "Advance him to the rank of a gentleman" (Johnson). S. does not use *gentle* elsewhere as a verb. *Condition* is a quadrisyllable, as in iv. 1. 242 above.

68. *Bestow yourself.* Repair to your post.

69. *Bravely.* Gallantly. Cf. *Temp.* v. 1. 224: "bravely rigg'd," etc. *Battles* = battalions. See on iv. prol. 9 above.

70. *Expedience.* Expedition, haste. Cf. *Rich. II.* ii. 1. 287: "making hither with all due expedience." So *expediently* = quickly in *A. Y. L.* iii. 1. 18: "Do this expediently," etc.

76. *Five thousand men.* Apparently used in a loose way to mean an army, not in a strict arithmetical sense.

77. *Likes me.* Pleases me. See on iv. 1. 16 above.

83. *Englutted.* Swallowed up. Cf. *Oth.* i. 3. 57: "it engluts and swallows other sorrows;" *T. of A.* ii. 2. 175: —

> "How many prodigal bits have slaves and peasants
> This night englutted!"

84. *Mind.* Remind. See on 13 above.

86. *Retire.* For the noun, cf. *K. John*, ii. 1. 326, v. 5. 4, etc.

91. *Achieve.* "Finish, kill" (Schmidt). Some make it = capture, get possession of; as in *M. of V.* iii. 2. 210, etc.

95. *A many.* See on iii. 7. 71 above.

96. *Native.* That is, in England. See on iv. 1. 171 above.

104. *Abounding.* Theobald preferred to read "a bounding," which some eds. adopt.

107. *Relapse.* S. accents the noun on either syllable. *Relapse of mortality* = "a rebound of death or deadliness" (Schmidt). Herford explains it thus: "in the very act of being resolved into their mortal elements; as they decompose." The whole passage (98-107) is in the worst vein of Elizabethan "conceits." S. could not have written it a few years later.

109. *For the working-day.* Cf. i. 2. 277 above.

110. *Gilt.* Gilding. Cf. *T. of A.* iv. 3. 302: "in thy gilt and thy perfume;" *Rich. II.* ii. 1. 294: "our sceptre's gilt," etc.

114. *Slovenry.* Slovenliness; used by S. nowhere else.

117. *Or they will pluck*, etc. Though they have to pluck, etc.

128. *York.* Edward, Duke of York, the Aumerle of *Rich. II.*

130. *Vaward.* Vanguard. Cf. *Cor.* i. 6. 53: "Their bands i' the vaward," etc. It is used metaphorically in *M. N. D.* iv. 1. 110 and 2 *Hen. IV.* i. 2. 199.

SCENE IV. — 4. *Callino*, etc. The folio has "Qualtitie calmie custure me." Various emendations had been proposed before Boswell found an old Irish song called "Callino, castore me," or "Calen o custure me," which, he suggests, Pistol probably hums contemptuously. This speech is printed as prose by the editors generally; but it was probably meant to be two lines of Pistol's blank verse, the first ending with *thou.*

9. *Fox.* A cant word for *sword.* The figure of a fox was often engraved on blades. Steevens quotes Beaumont and Fletcher, *Philaster:* "I made my father's old fox fly about his ears;" and *The Two Angry Women of Abington*, 1599: "I had a sword, ay, the flower of Smithfield for a sword; a right fox, i' faith."

15. *Rim.* "The membrane enclosing the intestines; the peritoneum; hence, loosely, the intestines" (*Century Dict.*). Steevens quotes Sir Arthur Gorges, *Lucan*, 1614: —

> "The slender rimme too weake to part
> The boyling liver from the heart."

The word is also used by Holland in his *Pliny*, and by Chapman in his *Iliad.* Cole, in his *Dict.*, 1678, describes it as the caul in which the bowels are wrapped. In the present passage it probably refers to the midriff.

19. *Brass.* As Sir W. Rawlinson notes, either S. had little knowledge of French or his fondness for punning led him here into an error; for the *s* in *bras* is silent. Johnson suggested that the pronunciation may have been different in the time of S., but Malone and Douce have proved that it was the same as now. Sir

W. Davenant makes the word rhyme with *draw*; and Eliot, in his *Orthoepia Gallica*, 1593, directs that *bras de fer* be pronounced "bra de fer." S. probably varied it for stage effect.

20. *Luxurious.* Lustful; as always in S. Cf. *luxury* in iii. 5. 6.

23. *Moys.* Apparently meant for money of some kind, and perhaps suggested by *moidore*. Douce says that *moy* was a measure of corn, but it is not likely that it has that meaning here.

24. *Ask me.* For the pronoun, see on iii. 6. 67 above.

29. *Firk.* Beat, drub. *Ferret* = worry, as a ferret does its game. Schmidt quotes the old play of *King Leir*: "I 'll ferret you ere night for that word."

73. *This roaring devil*, etc. In the old "moralities" or comedies, the Vice or buffoon had a sword or dagger of lath, with which he used to beat the devil, and sometimes attempted to pare his long nails. Cf. *T. N.* iv. 11. 134: —

> "Like to the old Vice,
> . . . . .
> Who, with dagger of lath,
> In his rage and his wrath,
> Cries, ah, ha! to the devil:
> Like a mad lad,
> Pare thy nails, dad," etc.

76. *Adventurously.* Daringly, boldly; used by S. only here.

Scene V. — 1. Here, as in iii. 7 above, the quarto omits the Dauphin from the list of speakers. The stage-direction is simply "*Enter the foure French Lords*" — that is, "Burbon, Constable, Orleance, and Gebon" (see on iii. 7. 1).

3. *Confounded.* Ruined, lost; a very common meaning in S.

7. *Perdurable.* Lasting. Cf. *Oth.* i. 3. 343: "cables of perdurable toughness."

8. *Be.* Often so used in questions.

11. *Let us die in honour.* The folio has "Let vs dye in once more backe againe." Knight suggested the reading in the text.

The quarto has "Lets dye with honour, our shame doth last too long."

12. *Friend.* Befriend. Cf. *Hen. VIII.* i. 2. 140: "Not friended by his wish," etc.

13. *On heaps.* Cf. v. 2. 39 below; also *T. and C.* iii. 2. 29, *J. C.* i. 3. 23, etc.

SCENE VI. — 8. *Larding.* Enriching. Cf. 1 *Hen. IV.* ii. 2. 116: "lards the lean earth," etc. Wright explains it as "garnishing," and compares *Ham.* iv. 5. 37: "Larded with sweet flowers."

9. *Honour-owing.* Honour-owning, honourable. Cf. *Temp.* iii. 1. 45: "the noblest grace she owed," etc.

11. *Haggled.* Cut, mangled; used by S. only here.

18. *Well-foughten.* Elsewhere S. has *fought* for the participle.

21. *Raught.* The old imperfect of *reach*, and the only one in S. Cf. *L. L. L.* iv. 2. 41, 3 *Hen. VI.* i. 4. 68, etc. We have the participle *raught* in 2 *Hen. VI.* ii. 3. 43 and *A. and C.* iv. 9. 30; but *reached* in *Oth.* i. 2. 24.

31. *All my mother*, etc. Cf. *T. N.* ii. 1. 42 and *Ham.* iv. 7. 190.

33. *Perforce.* Necessarily; in this sense always joined with *must.* Cf. *M. N. D.* iii. 2. 90, etc.

34. *Mistful.* The folio has "mixtful;" corrected by Warburton. Some eds. read "wistful."

35. *But, hark!* etc. The alarum was sounded by affrighted fugitives from the English camp, who declared that the French were making an attack in the rear. Henry, not knowing the extent of the danger, gave the order for killing the prisoners (Malone).

SCENE VII. — 1. *Kill the poys*, etc. The English baggage was guarded only by boys and lackeys; and some French runaways, learning this fact, attacked them and plundered the baggage. It is this villany to which Fluellen alludes.

9. *The king, most worthily*, etc. Johnson points out that the king gives one reason for killing the prisoners (iv. 6. 36), and Gower

another; but S. follows Holinshed, who gives both these reasons for Henry's conduct.

49. *Great-pelly doublet.* Capell's pointing, and favoured by "thin-belly doublet" in *L. L. L.* iii. 1. 19. Theobald and others have "great belly-doublet."

55. *Enter* KING HENRY, *with* BOURBON *and prisoners*, etc. The folio reading. Most of the modern eds. omit the reference to *prisoners*. But Holinshed describes a renewal of the battle after the slaughter of the prisoners previously taken (iv. 6. 35). "It is pretty clear that S. meant to represent this by the fight ensuing on the desperate charge of Bourbon (iv. 5. 11). As the result of that, Bourbon and others are taken" (Herford).

56. *I was not angry.* For the tense, cf. *A. and C.* i. 3. 1: "I did not see him since;" *Cymb.* iv. 2. 66: "I saw him not these many years," etc.

62. *Skirr.* Move rapidly, scour. Cf. *Mach.* v. 3. 35: "skirr the country round."

63. *Enforced.* Thrown with force. Cf. 2 *Hen. IV.* iv. 1. 71, etc.

70. *Fin'd.* Fixed as the payment.

74. *To look.* To look for. Cf. *M. W.* iv. 2. 79: "I will look some linen;" *A. W.* iii. 6. 115: "I must go look my twigs," etc. The folio has "book" (= register; as in *Sonn.* 127. 9 and 2 *Hen. IV.* iv. 3. 50), which many eds. retain. Holinshed says that Henry "granted the request" of the French officers, who "*sought* through the field *for* such as were slain."

76. *Woe the while.* Alas for the time! Cf. *W. T.* iii. 2. 173 and *J. C.* i. 3. 83.

81. *Yerk.* Jerk, thrust. Cf. *Oth.* i. 2. 5: "to have yerk'd him here under the ribs."

86. *A many.* See on iii. 7. 71 above.

92. *Crispin Crispianus.* That is, of Crispin and Crispianus. See on iv. 4. 40 above.

100. *In a garden*, etc. See on iv. 1. 55 above.

101. *Monmouth caps.* Fuller, in his *Worthies of Wales*, says:

"The best caps were formerly made at Monmouth, where the Cappers' chapel doth still remain." Reed quotes the old ballad of *The Caps:* "The soldiers that the Monmouth wear," etc.

117. *Our heralds go*, etc. Third person imperative, or "subjunctive imperative."

118. *Just notice.* Exact information. Cf. *M. of V.* iv. 1. 327: "a just pound;" *Oth.* i. 3. 5: "a just account," etc.

127. *Swaggered with me.* Bullied me. Cf. 2 *Hen. IV.* ii. 4. 107: "he 'll not swagger with a Barbary hen, if her feathers turn back in any show of resistance."

137. *Great sort.* High rank. Cf. iv. 8. 79 below: "prisoners of good sort," etc.

Quite from the answer, etc. Quite debarred by the laws of the duello from answering the challenge of one of inferior rank. On *from* = away from, cf. *J. C.* ii. 1. 196: "Quite from the main opinion," etc. There is a play upon this sense of *from* in *Rich. III.* iv. 4. 258: "That thou dost love my daughter from thy soul," etc.

138. *As goot a gentleman*, etc. A proverbial expression. Cf. *Lear*, iii. 4. 148: "The prince of darkness is a gentleman."

142. *Jack-sauce.* Fluellen's blunder for *Saucy Jack.* For *Jack* as a term of contempt, cf. 1 *Hen. IV.* iii. 3. 99, v. 4. 143, *R. and J.* ii. 4. 160, *M. of V.* iii. 4. 77. etc.

155. *When Alençon and myself*, etc. This alludes to an historical fact. Henry was felled to the ground by the Duke of Alençon, but recovered himself and slew two of the duke's attendants.

181. *Valiant.* Metrically a trisyllable; as in iv. 1. 46 and *Temp.* iii. 2. 27.

183. *Will return.* The ellipsis of the nominative is not uncommon when it can be readily supplied. Cf. *W. T.* iv. 4. 168: "They call him Doricles; and boasts himself," etc.

Scene VIII. — 10. *'Sblood.* A common oath, abbreviated from *God's blood;* usually omitted or replaced by other words in the folio.

23. *Contagious.* Probably Fluellen meant "outrageous."

24. *In a summer's day.* See on iii. 6. 65 above.

44. *Bitter terms.* Bitter words. Cf. v. 2. 99 below.

55. *Lowliness.* Humble bearing. Cf. *L. L. L.* iv. 1. 81: "thou the beggar; for so witnesseth thy lowliness."

79. *Sort.* Rank. See on iv. 7. 137 above.

84. *This note*, etc. Cf. Holinshed, p. 181 above.

92. *Mercenaries.* Hired soldiers, common soldiers.

108. *Davy Gam, esquire.* This gentleman, being sent by Henry, before the battle, to find out the strength of the enemy, made this report: "May it please you, my liege, there are enough to be killed, enough to be taken prisoners, and enough to run away." He saved the king's life in the field (Malone).

109. *Of name.* Of eminence. Cf. *Rich. II.* ii. 3. 56: "None else of name and noble estimate."

114. *So great and little loss*, etc. Cf. *Macb.* i. 3. 60: —

> "Speak then to me, who neither beg nor fear
> Your favours nor your hate," etc.

See also on ii. 4. 18 and ii. 4. 106–8 above.

117. *Go we.* The 1st person imperative, or "subjunctive imperative." Cf. 126 below: "Do we all holy rites," etc.

129. *We 'll.* The quarto reading, adopted by many editors. The folio has "And."

ACT V

PROLOGUE. — 3. *Them.* This "redundant object" occurs often in S. Cf. *Lear*, i. 1. 272: "I know you what you are;" *A. and C.* v. 1. 51: "We 'll hear him what he says," etc.

10. *Pales in.* Encloses, encompasses. Cf. *Cymb.* iii. 1. 19: —

> "As Neptune's park, ribbed and paled in
> With rocks unscalable and roaring waters."

For *wives* = women, cf. *M. of V.* iii. 2. 58, *Cor.* iv. 4. 5, etc.

12. *Whiffler.* "An officer who walks first in processions, or before persons in high stations, on occasions of ceremony" (Hanmer). In the play of *Clyomon*, 1599, a whiffler makes his appearance at a tournament, clearing the way before the king. Cf. *The Isle of Gulls*, 1606: "And Manasses shall go before like a whiffler, and make way with his horns."

17. *Where that*, etc. Where his lords wish him to have his bruised helmet, etc., borne before him. See Holinshed, p. 182 above. For *that*, see on i. 2. 178 above.

21. *Giving full trophy*, etc. "Transferring all the honours of conquest, all trophies, tokens, and shows, from himself to God" (Johnson). For *quite from*, see on iv. 7. 137 above.

25. *Sort.* Manner, style. Cf. *T. of S.* iii. 1. 67: "in a more fairer sort," etc.

26. *Antique.* Spelt *antick* or *antique* in the old eds. without regard to the meaning, but always accented on the first syllable.

29. *By a lower*, etc. "To compare Henry's triumphal entry with another, less momentous, but not less welcome" (Herford).

30. *The general.* The Earl of Essex. See Introduction, p. 9.

32. *Broached.* Spitted, transfixed. Cf. *T. A.* iv. 2. 85: "I 'll broach the tadpole on my rapier's point."

34. *Much more cause. With* may be understood, or "and *there was* much more cause" may be a parenthesis.

38. *The emperor.* The reference is to the German emperor Sigismond, who was married to Henry's second cousin. The folio has "Emperor's" (probably = "emperor is"), which may be right. The emendation is M. Mason's.

41. *Back-return.* See on iv. 1. 174 above.

43. *Remembering you.* Reminding you. Cf. *Temp.* i. 2. 243: "Let me remember thee what thou hast promis'd," etc.

Scene I. — 5. *Scald.* Scurvy, scabby. Cf. *A. and C.* v. 2. 215: "scald rhymers;" *M. W.* iii. 1. 123: "This same scall [Evans's pronunciation of the word], scurvy, cogging companion."

21. *Parca's fatal web.* The *Parcæ* were the Fates.

29. *Cadwallader.* The last of the Welsh kings.

32. *Trojan.* A cant term of reproach. Cf. *L. L. L.* v. 2. 640, etc.

40. *Astonished.* Some explain this as = stunned (with the blow); others as = confounded, amazed. Knight says that the word is still a pugilistic term = stunned.

50. *I eat, and yet I swear —.* The folio reads: "I eate and eate I sweare." Grant White's emendation, as in the text, seems to me the best that has been suggested.

77. *Gleeking.* Scoffing, sneering. Cf. *M. N. D.* iii. 1. 150: "I can gleek upon occasion." *Galling*, which has much the same meaning, is not elsewhere used intransitively by S.

82. *Condition.* Temper, disposition. Cf. *M. of V.* i. 2. 143: "the condition of a saint, and the complexion of a devil," etc.

83. *Huswife.* The usual spelling of *housewife* in the folio. The word is here used contemptuously = hussy. Cf. *A. and C.* iv. 15. 44: "the false housewife Fortune."

84. *Spital.* Hospital. Cf. ii. 1. 75 above. So *spital-house* in *T. of A.* iv. 3. 39. For *Nell* the folio has "Doll"; corrected by Capell. Cf. ii. 1. 19, 32.

92. Johnson remarks here: "The comick scenes of The History of Henry the Fourth and Fifth are now at an end, and all the comick personages are now dismissed. Falstaff and Mrs. Quickly are dead; Nym and Bardolph are hanged; Gadshill was lost immediately after the robbery; Poins and Peto have vanished since, one knows not how; and Pistol is now beaten into obscurity. I believe every reader regrets their departure."

SCENE II. — 1. *Wherefore.* For which; as occasionally.

3. *Health*, etc. Cf. *L. L. L.* v. 2. 339: "All hail, sweet madam, and fair time of day!" See also *Rich. III.* i. 1. 122.

17. *The fatal balls.* The eyes of the basilisk were fabled to kill with a glance. Cf. *W. T.* i. 2. 388: "Make me not sighted like the basilisk;" *Rich. III.* i. 2. 151: —

" *Gloster.* Thine eyes, sweet lady, have infected mine.
Anne. Would they were basilisks, to strike thee dead ! "

See also *Cymb.* ii. 4. 107, etc. There is a play on the word here, a kind of cannon being called a *basilisk.* See 1 *Hen. IV.* ii. 3. 56: "Of basilisks, of cannon, culverin ; " also Marlowe, *Jew of Malta* : —

" Which with our bombards, shot, and basilisk,
We rent in sunder at our entry," etc.

19. *Have.* The plural is due to the intervening *looks,* — a "confusion of proximity."

23. *On equal love.* Cf. *Rich. III.* iv. 1. 4 : "On pure heart's love to greet the tender princes."

27. *Bar.* Barrier, place of congress (Johnson). On a previous occasion, Henry with his friends had had a conference with Katherine and her relatives in a field near Melun, where two pavilions were erected for the royal families, and a third between them for the interview. The Frenchmen, according to the Chronicle, "ditched, trenched, and paled their lodgings for fear of afterclappes ; but the Englishmen had their parte of the field only *barred* and parted." Malone suggests that S. may here have had this former meeting in his thoughts. The present conference took place in St. Peter's Church at Troyes, but the editors agree in supposing it to occur in a palace ; because, as Malone tells us, "St. Peter's Church would not admit of the French king and queen, etc., retiring, and then appearing again on the scene." See p. 183 above.

28. *Mightiness.* Plural. See p. 162 above.

31. *Congreeted.* Greeted one another ; used by S. only here.

33. *Rub.* Hindrance. See on ii. 2. 188.

34. *Why that.* Cf. *while that,* 46 below. See on i. 2. 178.

39. *On heaps.* See on iv. 5. 13 above.

40. *It own.* Its own. Cf. *Temp.* ii. 1. 163: "it own kind ; " *Ham.* v. 1. 244: "it own life," etc. *It* is an old provincial genitive, often used before *its* came into vogue, particularly in *it own,* which occurs seven times in S. The only instance of *its* in the Bible is in *Leviticus,* xxv. 5, where the ed. of 1611 has "it own."

41. *The merry cheerer of the heart.* Cf. *Psalms*, civ. 15.

42. *Even-pleach'd.* Trimmed to a smooth and even surface. Cf. *Much Ado*, i. 2. 10: "a thick-pleach'd alley;" *Id.* iii. 1. 7: "the pleached bower," etc.

44. *Leas.* Properly untilled land, pastures or meadows; but in S. always arable land. Cf. *Temp.* iv. 1. 60: "rich leas of wheat, rye, barley;" and *T. of A.* iv. 3. 193: "plough-torn leas." He has the word only three times.

45. *Fumitory.* The plant *Fumaria* (five species are found in England), called *fumiter* in *Lear*, iv. 4. 3.

47. *Deracinate.* Uproot, extirpate. Cf. *T. and C.* i. 3. 99:—

> "rend and deracinate
> The unity and married calm of states
> Quite from their fixure!"

Savagery here = wild growth; in *K. John*, iv. 3. 48, it means savage conduct, atrocity.

49. *Freckled cowslip.* Cf. *M. N. D.* ii. 1. 10:—

> "The cowslips tall her pensioners be.
> In their gold coats spots you see;
> Those be rubies, fairy favours,
> In those freckles live their savours."

The *burnet* is the *Poterium sanguisorba.* It was valued as a salad plant, and Bacon (*Essay of Gardens*, ed. 1625) says of it: "But those which *Perfume* the aire most delightfully, not *passed by* as the rest, but being *Trodden upon* and *Crushed*, are Three: That is Burnet, Wilde-Time, and Water-Mints. Therefore, you are to set whole Allies of them, to have the Pleasure when you walke or tread."

52. *Kecksies.* Properly the dried and withered stems of the hemlock, but the name is occasionally applied to the living plant. S. uses the word only here.

61. *Diffus'd.* Disordered, wild. The folio has "defus'd;" as

in *Rich. III.* i. 2. 78. Schmidt would retain that form, explaining it as = "shapeless."

63. *Favour.* Aspect, appearance. Cf. *J. C.* i. 2. 91, ii. 1. 76, etc. *Reduce* is used in the etymological sense = bring back.

65. *Let.* Impediment, hindrance. Cf. *R. of L.* 330, 646, etc.

68. *Would.* Would have; as often. Cf. iv. 1. 32 above.

73. *Enschedul'd.* Written down; used by S. only here.

77. *Cursorary.* Cursory, hasty. The folio has "curselarie," the quarto "cursenary."

78. *Pleaseth.* May it please. Cf. *C. of E.* iv. 1. 12, etc.

79. *Presently.* Immediately; as in iii. 2. 55. Cf. *Temp.* i. 2. 125, iv. 1. 42, etc.

82. *Pass our accept,* etc. Schmidt and others make *accept* a noun = acceptance; but the French king does not guarantee that he will accept the articles, but merely that he will give a definite answer. *Accept* may be a participle, as Wright suggests. The meaning, in any case, seems to be: give the answer which we have accepted as decisive, or on which we finally agree.

84. *And brother Clarence,* etc. Neither *Clarence* nor *Huntingdon* appear in the *dramatis personæ,* as neither speaks a word. Huntingdon was John Holland, Earl of Huntingdon, who afterward married the widow of Edmond Mortimer, Earl of March (Malone).

88. *Advantageable.* Advantageous, profitable; used by S. only here.

90. *Consign.* Agree. See 308 below, and cf. 2 *Hen. IV.* v. 2. 143: "God consigning to my good intents," etc.

94. *Too nicely urg'd.* Too sophistically pressed.

98. *Good leave.* Permission.

122. *Dat is de princess.* Probably = That is what the princess says. Herford thinks the sentence is incomplete, and that "Alice may be supposed to wish to qualify the candour of the sentiment, when the King cuts her short."

132. *Clap hands.* In token of betrothal. Cf. *W. T.* i. 2. 104: "And clap thyself my love." The expression is often used in con-

nection with the old formal betrothal, which S. introduces in *K. John*, *T. N.*, *T. of S.*, etc.

137. *You undid me.* You would undo me.

139. *In measure.* That is, in dancing. There is a play on the different senses of the word; as in *Much Ado*, ii. 1. 74, *L. L. L.* iv. 3. 384, and *Rich. II.* iii. 4. 7.

144. *Buffet.* Box. Cf. *K. John*, ii. 1. 465: —

> "Our ears are cudgell'd; not a word of his
> But buffets better than a fist of France."

146. *Jack-an-apes.* An ape or monkey. Cf. *M. W.* iv. 4. 67, *A. W.* iii. 5. 88, etc.

147. *Greenly.* Foolishly. Cf. *Ham.* iv. 5. 83: "we have done but greenly," etc. See also iv. prol. 39: "But freshly looks."

153. *I speak to thee plain soldier.* Cf. *K. John*, ii. 1. 462: "He speaks plain cannon fire;" *A. Y. L.* iii. 2. 227: "speak sad brow and true maid," etc.

158. *Plain and uncoined constancy.* That is, like a plain piece of metal that has not yet received any impression. For *perforce*, see on iv. 6. 33 above.

164. *Will fall.* Will fall away, shrink.

189. *Saint Denis.* The patron saint of France. Cf. *L. L. L.* v. 2. 87: "Saint Denis to Saint Cupid!"

212. *Scambling.* Scrambling, struggling. Cf. i. 1. 4 above.

221. *Très-cher et divin.* The error in gender may be intentional; but some editors print "très-chère et divine," though they do not correct the preceding *mon*. The folio has "*trescher & deuin:*" the passage is not found in the quartos.

228. *Untempering.* Not producing the desired effect, not moving or persuading. Cf. *temper* = fashion, mould; as in ii. 2. 118 above.

248. *Broken music.* "Some instruments, such as viols, violins, flutes, etc., were formerly made in sets of four, which when played together formed a 'consort.' If one or more of the instruments of

one set were substituted for the corresponding ones of another set, the result was no longer a 'consort,' but 'broken music'" (Chappell). Cf. *T. and C.* iii. 1. 52 and *A. Y. L.* i. 2. 150, where, as here, there is a play upon the expression.

260. *D' une votre indigne serviteur.* The folio has, "*d' une nostre Seigneur indignie seruiteur*," which is nonsense. The *Variorum* of 1821, following Pope, reads, "*d' une vostre indigne serviteure*," which is adopted by some editors; but I am not aware that there is any authority for the form *serviteure*. The Cambridge editors give, "d' une de votre seigneurie indigne serviteur."

279. *List.* Barrier, boundary. Cf. *A. Y. L.* ii. 1. 53, 1 *Hen. IV.* iv. 1. 51, *Ham.* iv. 5. 99, etc.

281. *Find-faults.* Fault-finders; used by S. only here.

297. *Condition.* Temper, disposition. See on v. 1. 70 above. *Smooth* = bland, gentle. Cf. 1 *Hen. IV.* i. 3. 7:—

> "my condition,
> Which hath been smooth as oil, soft as young down."

308. *Consign.* Agree. Cf. 90 above.

309. *Wink.* Shut their eyes. Cf. ii. 1. 7 and iii. 7. 143 above.

319. *This moral.* "That is, the application of this fable. The *moral* being the application of a fable, our author calls any application a *moral*" (Johnson). Cf. iii. 6. 38 above; also *Much Ado*, iii. 5. 78, *M. N. D.* v. 1. 120, *T. of S.* iv. 4. 79, etc.

327. *Perspectively.* As through a *perspective;* a contrivance by which optical illusions were produced. Cf. *Rich. II.* ii. 2. 18:—

> "Like perspectives, which rightly gaz'd upon
> Show nothing but confusion, eyed awry
> Distinguish form."

See also *T. N.* v. 1. 224 and *A. W.* v. 3. 48.

329. *Maiden walls*, etc. Malone quotes *R. of L.* 468 and *L. C.* 176; to which might be added *A. W.* i. 1. 137.

341. *According*, etc. That is, in the exact form in which they were proposed.

348. *Præclarissimus.* It should be *præcarissimus*, as it is in the original treaty (printed in Rymer's *Fœdera*); but S. copied the error (doubtless a typographical one) from Holinshed. The fact that the poet did not correct it confirms Ben Jonson's statement that he had "small Latin."

361. *That never war*, etc. So that war may never, etc. For *advance* (= raise), see on ii. 2. 192.

365. *I kiss her.* In accordance with the ancient ceremony of betrothal (see on 132 above). Cf. *T. N.* v. 1. 161: "Attested by the holy close of lips;" *K. John*, ii. 1. 534: —

> "*King Philip.* It likes us well; young princes, close your hands.
> *Austria.* And your lips too," etc.

372. *Paction.* Agreement, alliance. The folio has "pation;" corrected by Theobald. S. uses the word only here.

373. *Incorporate.* Cf. *M. N. D.* iii. 2. 208, etc.

Epilogue

1. *All-unable.* Weak, impotent. Cf. *Lear*, i. 1. 61: "speech unable," etc. See on iv. prol. 38 above.

2. *Bending.* "Unequal to the weight of his subject and bending beneath it; or he may mean, as in *Hamlet* [iii. 2. 160], 'Here *stooping* to your clemency'" (Steevens). Schmidt is also in doubt between these two explanations, of which I am inclined to prefer the former.

4. *By starts.* That is, by a fragmentary representation.

7. *The world's best garden.* France. Cf. *T. of S.* i. 1. 4: "The pleasant garden of great Italy." *Achiev'd* = gained, won. Cf. iv. 3. 91 above.

11. *The.* The article frequently precedes a verbal that is followed by an object.

13. *Oft.* In the three parts of *Henry VI.*, which had been popular on the stage.

14. *Let this*, etc. Let this play find acceptance.

APPENDIX

The Time-analysis of the Play

This is summed up by Mr. P. A. Daniel (*Trans. of New Shaks. Soc.* 1877–79, p. 297) as follows: —

"The period of history included in this play commences in the second year of Henry's reign, 1414, and ends with his betrothal to Katherine, 20th May, 1420.

This period is represented on the stage by nine days, with intervals.

1st Chorus. Prologue.
Day 1. Act I. sc. i and ii.
2d Chorus. *Interval.*
Day 2. Act II. sc. i.
Interval.[1]
" 3. Act. II. sc. ii. and iii.
Interval. Time for the arrival of the English army in France, and for the further journey of Exeter to the French court.
" 4. Act II. sc. iv.
3d Chorus. *Interval.*
Day 5. Act. III. sc. i.–iii.
Interval. March of King Henry towards Calais.
[Act III. sc. iv. Some time of the interval succeeding Day 4.]

[1] "Less time than one week for poor Sir John's sickness, death, and burial cannot well be defined, and, but that kings must not be kept waiting, I should have set down at least a fortnight."

Day 6. Act. III. sc. v.
Interval; a day or two.
" 7. Act III. sc. vi.,[1] and first part of sc. vii.
" 8. Act III. sc. vii., second part. 4th CHORUS, and Act IV. sc. i.–viii. 5th CHORUS. *Interval.*
[Act V. sc. i. Some time in the early part of the last Interval.[2]]
Day 9. Act V. sc. ii.
6th CHORUS. Epilogue."

LIST OF CHARACTERS IN THE PLAY

The numbers in parentheses indicate the lines the characters have in each scene.

King Henry: i. 2(120); ii. 2(137); iii. 1(34), 3(51), 6(45); iv. 1(213), 3(95), 6(12), 7(65), 8(58); v. 2(233). Whole no. 1063.

Gloucester: iii. 6(1); iv. 1(2), 3(1), 7(1). Whole no. 5.

[1] "In this scene we have a noticeable instance of the method in which time is frequently dealt with in these plays; the progress of events keeping pace with the dialogue in which they are narrated. Pistol comes to urge Fluellen to intercede with Exeter for Bardolph, who is sentenced to be hanged for stealing a pax of little price; Fluellen declines to interfere, and almost immediately after — without his quitting the stage, and without any break in the action which might assist the spectator in imagining the passage of time — he is able to inform the King, who enters, that Bardolph's 'nose is executed, and his fire's out.'"

[2] "Yesterday, it seems, was St. David's Day, and Pistol, in fulfilment of his vow recorded in Act IV. sc. i., had taken advantage of Fluellen's presence in a place where he 'could not breed no contention,' to insult him about his leek. Fluellen now revenges himself, and cudgels Pistol into eating the leek he loathed. The locality of this scene is France; for in his last speech, Pistol says, 'to England will I steal:' its time, dramatically considered, should probably be imagined within a few days of Day 8." [As to St. David's Day, see on iv. 1. 55.]

Bedford: i. 2(3); iv. 3(4). Whole no. 7.

Exeter: i. 2(16); ii. 2(11), 4(57); iv. 3(4), 6(27), 7(2), 8(5); v. 2(8). Whole no. 130.

York: iv. 3(2). Whole no. 2.

Salisbury: iv. 3(9). Whole no. 9.

Westmoreland: i. 2(14); ii. 2(3); iv. 3(7); v. 2(3). Whole no. 27.

Warwick: iv. 8(1). Whole no. 1.

Canterbury: i. 1(82), 2(141). Whole no. 223.

Ely: i. 1(20), 2(7). Whole no. 27.

Cambridge: ii. 2(15). Whole no. 15.

Scroop: ii. 2(13). Whole no. 13.

Grey: ii. 2(13). Whole no. 13.

Erpingham: iv. 1(7). Whole no. 7.

Gower: iii. 2(14), 6(23); iv. 1(4), 7(15), 8(1); v. 1(18). Whole no. 75.

Fluellen: iii. 2(48), 6(66); iv. 1(17), 7(83), 8(43); v. 1(53). Whole no. 310.

Macmorris: iii. 2(24). Whole no. 24.

Jamy: iii. 2(12). Whole no. 12.

Bates: iv. 1(21). Whole no. 21.

Court: iv. 1(2). Whole no. 2.

Williams: iv. 1(46), 7(12), 8(23). Whole no. 81.

Pistol: ii. 1(43), 3(16); iii. 2(13), 6(21); iv. 1(17), 4(30); v. 1(23). Whole no. 163.

Nym: ii. 1(42), 3(5); iii. 2(6). Whole no. 53.

Bardolph: ii. 1(26), 3(6); iii. 2(2). Whole no. 34.

Boy: ii. 1(5), 3(9); iii. 2(34); iv. 4(32). Whole no. 80.

English Herald: iv. 8(1). Whole no. 1.

French King: ii. 4(42); iii. 5(28); v. 2(26). Whole no. 96.

Dauphin: ii. 4(38); iii. 5(11), 7(56); iv. 2(10), 5(6). Whole no. 121.

Constable: ii. 4(12); iii. 5(21), 7(60); iv. 2(29), 5(4). Whole no. 126.

Bourbon: iii. 5(9); iv. 5(9). Whole no. 18.
Orleans: iii. 7(41); iv. 2(3), 5(5). Whole no. 49.
Burgundy: v. 2(68). Whole no. 68.
Rambures: iii. 7(9); iv. 2(2). Whole no. 11.
Grandpré: iv. 2(18). Whole no. 18.
Governor of Harfleur: iii. 3(7). Whole no. 7.
Montjoy: iii. 6(25); iv. 3(13), 7(16). Whole no. 54.
1st Ambassador: i. 2(17). Whole no. 17.
French Soldier: iv. 4(20). Whole no. 20.
Messenger: ii. 4(2); iii. 7(3); iv. 2(1). Whole no. 6.
Queen Isabel: v. 2(24). Whole no. 24.
Katherine: iii. 4(42); v. 2(31). Whole no. 73.
Alice: iii. 4(24); v. 2(9). Whole no. 33.
Hostess: ii. 1(17), 3(30). Whole no. 47.
"*Chorus*": prol. (34); prol. ii. (42); prol. iii. (35); prol. iv. (53); prol. v. (45); epil. (14). Whole no. 223.
"*All*": v. 2(2). Whole no. 2.

In the above enumeration, parts of lines are counted as whole lines, making the total of the play greater than it is. The actual number of lines in each scene (Globe edition numbering) is as follows: prol. (34); i. 1(98), 2(310); prol. ii. (42); ii. 1(133), 2(193), 3(66), 4(146); prol. iii. (35); iii. 1(34), 2(153), 3(58), 4(66), 5(68), 6(181), 7(169); prol. iv. (53); iv. 1(326), 2(63), 3(132), 4(82), 5(23), 6(38), 7(191), 8(131); prol. v. (45); v. 1(94), 2(402); epil. (14). Whole number in the play, 3380.

King Henry V. speaks more lines than any other character in Shakespeare. Besides 1063 in this play, he has 616 in 1 *Henry IV.* and 308 in 2 *Henry IV*, making 1987 in all. Falstaff comes next, having 719 in 1 *Henry IV.*, 688 in 2 *Henry IV.*, and 488 in the *Merry Wives*, or 1895 in all.

INDEX OF WORDS EXPLAINED

a many, 225, 231, 242
absolute (= perfect), 225
abuse (= deception), 199
accept (noun), 249
accomplishing, 227
accomplishment, 185
achieve, 238, 252
achievement, 220
act of order, 193
addiction, 187
addrest, 217
admiration, 204
advance (= raise), 206
advantage (noun), 191, 223, 237
advantage (verb), 233
advantageable, 249
adventurously, 240
advice (= reflection), 202
advised (= heedful), 192
afeard, 231
affiance, 204
Agincourt, 180
all at once, 186
all-unable, 252
all-watched, 228
ancient (= ensign), 199
annoy (= harm), 203
antics (= buffoons), 215
antique, 245
appertinents, 203
apprehension, 226
approbation (= proving), 188
argument, 214, 225, 231
as (= as if), 209
aspect (accent), 213
assays, 191
astonished, 246
attaint, 228
attest (= stand for), 184
aunchient, 221
awkward (= perverse), 211

babbled of green fields, 207
back-return, 245
bait (in falconry), 226
balls, 246
balm, 233
bar (= barrier), 247
Barbason, 200
barley broth, 219
basilisk, 247
battle (= army), 227
battles (= battalions), 238
bawcock, 215, 230
beard of the general's cut, 222
beaver (= visor), 235
bedfellow, 202
before-breach, 232
bending, 252
bend up, 214
best indued, 205
bestow (reflexive), 238
black soul, 207
bloody flag, 190
bolt (= arrow), 226
bolted, 205
boot (= booty), 193
bootless (adverb), 216
bow (= bend), 188
bras (pronunciation), 239
bravely, 238
brim fulness, 191
bring (= accompany), 206
broached, 245
broken music, 250
bubukles, 222
buffet, 250
burnet, 248
but one way, 207
buxom, 221
by and by (= soon), 202

Cadwallader, 246
Callino castore me, 239
candlesticks (fixed), 235
captived, 210
careful (= anxious), 232
carnation, 207
carry coals, to, 215
case (= pair), 214
casted, 229
caveto, 208
challenger, 211
chambers (= cannon), 213
chantries, 234
Charlemain, 189
Charles the Great, 189
chases, 195
cheerly, 206
chide, 211
christom, 206
civil (= well-governed), 193
clap hands, 249
clear thy crystals, 208
cold for action, 190
comes o'er us, 196
companies (= companions), 187
compassing = (obtaining), 233
complement, 204
compound (= agree), 201
condition (metre), 232, 238
condition (= temper), 246, 251
conditions (= qualities), 231
condole (= mourn), 201
confound (= ruin), 240
confounded (= wasted), 213
congreeing, 193
congreeted, 247
conscience (= judgment), 231
conscience (trisyllable), 189
consign, 249, 251
consort (in music), 250
constant (= firm), 209
contemplation, 187
contrived (= plotted), 232

convey, 189
convoy, 237
coranto, 220
corporal, 185
correct (intransitive), 193
couple a gorge, 200
coursing snatchers, 191
cowarded, 203
craft, 223
create (= created), 202
Crécy, 181
crescive, 187
Crispian, 237
Crispin, 237
crystals (= eyes), 208
cue, upon our, 223
currance, 186
curscrary, 249
curst, 192
curtains (= banners), 235
curtle-axe, 235

damnation (metre), 204
dare the field, 235
dear (= grievous), 205
defeat on, 190
Delabreth, 220
deliver (= say), 223
deracinate, 248
desire (= invite), 229
desolation (metre), 216
desperate of, 235
destruction (metre), 216
diffused, 248
digested, 199
discovered (= uncovered), 205
distemper, 203
distressful, 233
do (loss), 237
Dolphin (= Dauphin), 194
do my good morrow, 229
dout, 234
drawn, 200
dress (= prepare), 229
duke, 215
dull (verb), 208

earnest (money), 205
either's (= each other's), 204
eke, 213
elder-gun, 232
element (= sky), 231
elements, 224
embattled, 234
empery, 194
enforced, 242
England (= King of England), 208
englutted, 238
enlarge (= free), 202
enow, 237
enrounded, 228
enscheduled, 249
estate, 231
evenly, 211
even-pleached, 248
executors (accent), 193
exhale, 200
exhibitors, 187
expectation (metre), 209
expedience (= haste), 238
expedition (= march), 206

faculty, 187
fall (= shrink), 250
farced, 233
fat-brained, 226
fate, 210
favour (= aspect), 249
feared (= frightened), 192
ferret, 240
fet, 214
figo, 222, 231
find-faults, 251
fine (= make specious), 189
fined, 242
finer (= fine ?), 206
firk, 240
fit (= befit), 208
fleshed, 210, 216
Fluellen, 215
foils (= fencers), 229
Foix, 220
fool's bolt, 226
footed (= landed), 212
force a play, 199
fore, 201, 233
fore-hand, 233
forespent, 209
fox (= sword), 239
fracted, 201
France (dissyllable), 192
freckled (cowslip), 248
French crowns, 232
fresh-fair, 216
freshly (looks), 228
friend (verb), 241
from (= away from), 243, 245
full-fraught, 205
fumble with the sheets, 206
fumitory, 248

galled, 213
galliard, 194
galling, 246
gates of mercy, 216
gentle (verb), 238
gentles, 199
giddy (= excitable), 191
gilt (= gilding), 238
gilt (= gold), 198
gimmal bit, 236
gleaned (= exhausted), 191
gleeking, 246
glistering, 204
gloze, 189
go about (= attempt), 232
God-a-mercy, 230
God before, 197
god-den, 215
grace (of kings), 198
great-belly doublet, 242
greenly, 250
grossly, 204
gun-stones, 196

habit (= herald's coat), 223
haggled, 241
Hampton, 203
handkerchers, 215
happy (= propitious), 197
hard-favoured, 213
hardiness, 193
Harfleur, 213
have at you, 226
heady, 217
heavy orisons, 203
Hermes, 224
hilding, 235
hilts, 198
his (= its), 187
his (possessive affix), 190
hollow (= false), 198
honey-sweet, 206
honour-owing, 241
hooded, 226
hound of Crete, 201
humorous, 209
husbandry (= thrift), 229
huswife, 246
Hyperion, 233

Iceland dog, 200
ill-favouredly, 235
imaginary, 185
imagined, 212
imbar, 190
imp (= youngling), 230
impawn, 189
impeachment, 223
imposed upon, 232
in (= into), 193
in a summer's day, 222, 244
in exception, 209
in few, 194
ingrateful, 203
in head, 202
instance (= cause), 204
intendment, 191
intertissued, 233
invention (quadrisyllable), 184
investing, 228
it own, 247

Jack-an-apes, 250
Jack sauce, 243
jades, 224
jealousy, 204
Jewry, 217
just (= exact), 243
jutty (verb), 213

kecksies, 248
kind (= filial), 198
kinged, 209

Lady Lingare, the, 189
lambkins, 201
larding, 241
late, 203
latter (= last), 231
lavoltas, 219
lay down proportions, 191
lazar kite of Cressid's kind, 201
lazars, 185
leas, 248
leashed in, 184
legerity, 229
let (noun), 249
let slip, 163
like (adverb), 185, 205
likes (= pleases), 213, 229, 238
line (= pedigree), 211
line (= strengthen), 208
lineal of, 189
linstock, 213
list (= barrier), 251
living hence, 196
lob down, 236
long (= belong), 211
look (= look for), 242
Louvre, 212
lowliness, 244
luxurious (= lustful), 240
luxury (lust), 218

make boot upon, 193
make forth, 208
make road, 191
marches (= borders), 191
masters (= possesses), 212
measure (= dancing), 250
mercenaries, 244
Mercury, 197
mervailous, 200
mightiness (plural), 247
mind (= remind), 236, 238
minding, 229
miscarry, 232
miscreate, 188
mistful, 241
Monmouth caps, 242
moral, 251
more sharper, 220
morris-dance, 209
mortified (= killed), 186
mould (men of), 215
mountain sire, 210
moys, 240
muffler, 221
musters (noun), 209

name (= eminence), 244
narrow ocean, 201
narrow seas, 185
native, 232, 238
nicely, 249
noble (coin), 201
nook-shotten, 219
nor never, 186
note (= indication), 228

ocean (trisyllable), 214
o'erblows, 217
o'erwhelm, 213
of (= about), 207
of (= from), 189
of him (= his), 210
on heaps, 241, 247
ordinance (= ordnance), 212
orisons, 203
outwear (= wear away), 236
overbears, 228
overlook (= look down on), 218
overlook (= look over), 211
over-lusty, 228
O, wooden, 184

paction, 252
pales in, 244
paper, 203
Parca, 246
parle, 216
passages, 188, 222
pavilion (metre), 229
pax, 221
peevish (= silly), 226
Pegasus, 224
pennons, 220
perdurable, 240
perdy, 200
perforce, 241, 250
perilous, 185
perspectively, 251
Phœbus, 233
pitch and pay, 208
pith (= strength), 213
plain-song, 214
pleaseth, 249
policy, 194
popular, 230
popularity, 187
poring, 227
portage, 213
possess, 231
powers (= troops), 202, 217
practic, 186
practices (= plots), 203
præclarissimus, 252
prayers (dissyllable), 236
precept (accent), 216
preparation (metre), 198, 227
prescript, 225
presently, 249
pretty (diminutive), 192
projection (= plan), 210
proportion (verb), 223
proportions, 191, 197
puissance, 185, 206, 213
purchase, 215

quality (=profession), 223
quarrel, 231
question (= debate), 185
quick (= living), 203
quit (reflexive), 220
quit (= requite), 216
quotidian tertian, 201

rackets, 195
raught, 241
rawly, 231
re-answer, 223
reasonable, 197
reduce, 249
relapse (accent), 238
remember (=remind), 245
renowned (transitive), 191
require (= demand), 211
resolved (= satisfied), 188
rest (= resolve), 199
retire (noun), 238
returns (= answers), 217
rim, 239
rivage, 212
Roan (= Rouen), 220
robustious, 226
rode (= ridden), 236
round (= blunt), 232
royalty (= majesty), 212
rub (= obstacle), 205, 247

sack, 207
sad-eyed, 193
safeguard (verb), 192
sail (figurative), 196
Saint Davy, 230
Saint Denis, 250
Salique law, 188
savage (= uncultivated), 218
savagery, 248
'sblood, 243
scald, 245
scambling, 185, 250
sconce, 222
seat (= throne), 196
seats (= estates), 220
security (= carelessness), 202
self (adjective), 185
severals, 188
shales, 235
shog, 200
show (= appear), 204
shrewdly, 225
signs of war, 206
sinfully, 232
sinister (accent), 211
sits (of the wind), 202
skirr, 242
slanders (= slanderers), 222
slips, 214
slobbery, 219
slough, 229
slovenry, 239
smooth (= bland), 251
snatchers, 191
so (omitted), 186, 191, 227, 252
solus, 200
sonance, 235
sooth (= truth), 223
sort (= manner), 245
sort (= rank), 243
sorts (= agrees), 231
sorts (= degrees), 193
sovereign (trisyllable), 211
speculation, 235
spend their mouths, 211
spiritualty, 191
spital, 201, 246
sprays of us, 218
squares (= squadrons), 235
Staines, 206
sternage, 213
still (= always), 191, 234
stilly, 227
stomach (play upon), 227
strain (= race), 210
struck (battle), 210
sufferance, 203, 205
suggest (= tempt), 204
sumless, 192
sur-reined, 219
swaggered with me, 242
swashers, 215
swilled, 214
sympathize with, 226

take, 200
tall (= valiant), 200
Tartar (= Tartarus), 204
tempered, 204
tender (= cherish), 205
that (conjunctional affix), 192, 245, 247
theoric, 186
threaden, 212
thrive, 197
tike, 200
to (= for), 213
to (omitted and inserted), 211
Trojan, 246
troth-plight, 200
Troyes Cathedral, 183
tucket, 235

umbered, 227
unhidden, 188
untempering, 250
upon, 188, 229

valiant (trisyllable), 230, 243
vantage, 223
vasty, 184, 204, 211
vaward, 239
venge, 197
via! 234
vigil, 237
violation (metre), 216
voice (= verdict), 204
void his rheum, 220

wafer cakes, 208
war proof, 214
was (= have been), 242
wasteful, 196
waxen, 194
well appointed, 212
well-foughten, 241
well placed, 226
what (= who), 237
wherefore, 246
which (= who), 189
whiffler, 245
whiles, 190, 217
white livered, 215
Whitsun morris-dance, 209
wink (= shut the eyes), 199, 226, 251
with (= by), 212, 232
withal, 194, 218
woe the while, 242
womby, 211
worshipped, 194
wots, 233
would (= wish), 249
wringing (= suffering), 232

yearn, 206, 237
yerk, 242

ROLFE'S ENGLISH CLASSICS

Designed for Use in High Schools and Other Secondary Schools

Edited by WILLIAM J. ROLFE, Litt. D.

Formerly Head Master, High School, Cambridge, Mass.

Uniform Flexible Cloth, 12mo. Illustrated. Each, 56 Cents

Browning's Select Poems

Twenty Poems (including "Pippa Passes"), with Introduction, Life of Browning, Chronological Table of His Works, List of Books useful in studying them, Critical Comments, and Notes.

Browning's Select Dramas

Containing "A Blot in the 'Scutcheon," "Colombe's Birthday," and "A Soul's Tragedy"—with Introduction, Critical Comments, and Notes.

Goldsmith's Select Poems

"The Traveller," "The Deserted Village," and "Retaliation," with Life of Goldsmith, Recollections and Criticisms by Thackeray, Coleman the Younger, Campbell, Forster, and Irving, and Notes.

Gray's Select Poems

The "Elegy," "The Bard," "The Progress of Poesy," and other Poems, with Life of Gray, William Howitt's Description of Stoke-Pogis, and historical, critical, and explanatory Notes.

Macaulay's Lays of Ancient Rome

With the Author's Preface and Introductions, Criticisms by John Stuart Mill, Henry Morley, "Christopher North," and others, historical and explanatory Notes, and copious Illustrations.

Milton's Minor Poems

Containing all of Milton's Minor Poems except the Translations, with biographical and critical Introductions, and historical and explanatory Notes.

Wordsworth's Select Poems

Seventy-one Poems, with Life, Criticisms from Matthew Arnold, R. H. Hutton, Principal Shairp, J. R. Lowell, and Papers of the Wordsworth Society, and very full Notes. Illustrated by Abbey, Parsons, and other eminent artists.

Copies will be sent, prepaid, on receipt of the price.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

NEW YORK CINCINNATI CHICAGO

(s.96)

Webster's School Dictionaries

REVISED EDITIONS

WEBSTER'S SCHOOL DICTIONARIES in their revised form constitute a progressive series, carefully graded and especially adapted for Primary Schools, Common Schools, High Schools, Academies, and private students. These Dictionaries have all been thoroughly revised, entirely reset, and made to conform in all essential respects to Webster's International Dictionary.

WEBSTER'S PRIMARY SCHOOL DICTIONARY . . $0.48
Containing over 20,000 words and meanings, with over 400 illustrations.

WEBSTER'S COMMON SCHOOL DICTIONARY . $0.72
Containing over 25,000 words and meanings, with over 500 illustrations.

WEBSTER'S HIGH SCHOOL DICTIONARY . . $0.98
Containing about 37,000 words and definitions, with over 800 illustrations.

WEBSTER'S ACADEMIC DICTIONARY
Cloth, $1.50; Indexed . $1.80
The Same . . Half Calf, $2.75; Indexed, 3.00
Abridged directly from the International Dictionary, and giving the orthography, pronunciations, definitions, and synonyms of the large vocabulary of words in common use, with over 800 illustrations.

SPECIAL EDITIONS

Webster's Countinghouse Dictionary. Sheep, Indexed, $2.40
Webster's Condensed Dictionary
Cloth, $1.44; Indexed . 1.75
The Same . . Half Calf, $2.75; Indexed, 3.00
Webster's Handy Dictionary 15
Webster's Pocket Dictionary. Cloth 57
The Same. Roan Flexible 69
The Same. Roan Tucks 78
The Same. Morocco, Indexed 90
Webster's American People's Dictionary and Manual .48
Webster's Practical Dictionary 80

Copies sent, prepaid, on receipt of price.

American Book Company

NEW YORK CINCINNATI CHICAGO

(S. 104)

An Introduction to the

Study of American Literature

By BRANDER MATTHEWS

Professor of Literature in Columbia University

Cloth, 12mo, 256 pages . . . . Price $1.00

A text-book of literature on an original plan, and conforming with the best methods of teaching.

Admirably designed to guide, to supplement, and to stimulate the student's reading of American authors.

Illustrated with a fine collection of facsimile manuscripts, portraits of authors, and views of their homes and birthplaces.

Bright, clear, and fascinating, it is itself a literary work of high rank.

The book consists mostly of delightfully readable and yet comprehensive little biographies of the fifteen greatest and most representative American writers. Each of the sketches contains a critical estimate of the author and his works, which is the more valuable coming, as it does, from one who is himself a master. The work is rounded out by four general chapters which take up other prominent authors and discuss the history and conditions of our literature as a whole. The book also contains a complete chronology of the best American literature from the beginning down to the present period.

Each of the fifteen biographical sketches is illustrated by a fine portrait of its subject and views of his birthplace or residence and in some cases of both. They are also accompanied by each author's facsimile manuscript covering one or two pages. The book contains excellent portraits of many other authors famous in American literature.

Copies sent, prepaid, on receipt of the price.

American Book Company

NEW YORK • CINCINNATI • CHICAGO

(S. 91)

A History of English Literature

By REUBEN POST HALLECK, M.A. (Yale)

Cloth, 12mo, 499 pages. Illustrated . . Price $1.25

Halleck's History of English Literature is a concise and interesting text-book of the history and development of English literature from the earliest times to the present. While the work is sufficiently simple to be readily comprehended by high school students, the treatment is not only philosophic, but also stimulating and suggestive, and will naturally lead to original thinking.

The book is a history of literature and not a mere collection of biographical sketches. Only enough of the facts of an author's life are given to make students interested in him as a personality, and to show how his environment affected his work. The author's productions, their relation to the age, and the reasons why they hold a position in literature, receive treatment commensurate with their importance.

One of the most striking features of the work consists in the way in which literary movements are clearly outlined at the beginning of each of the chapters. Special attention is given to the essential qualities which differentiate one period from another, and to the animating spirit of each age.

At the end of each chapter a carefully prepared list of books is given to direct the student in studying the original works of the authors treated. He is told not only what to read, but also where to find it at the least cost.

Copies will be sent, prepaid, on receipt of the price.

American Book Company

NEW YORK CINCINNATI CHICAGO

(S. 00)

Important Text-Books in Rhetoric

BY ADAMS SHERMAN HILL

Boylston Professor of Rhetoric and Oratory in Harvard University

---

BEGINNINGS OF RHETORIC AND COMPOSITION $1.25

This book is designed primarily to meet the needs of pupils in secondary schools who are learning to express themselves with the pen; at the same time it contains so much information that is new in presentation and permanent in value that it is well adapted to more mature minds. It shows the young writer how to present what he has to say in the best English within his reach and in the form best adapted to his purpose. No supplement with exercises is required in connection with this work, as the book is complete in itself. Nearly two hundred exercises are introduced to aid the pupil in the most practical way.

FOUNDATIONS OF RHETORIC . . $1.00

The object of this book is to train boys and girls to say in written language, correctly, clearly, and effectively, what they have to say. It gives a minimum of space to technicalities and a maximum of space to essentials. In language singularly direct and simple it sets forth fundamental principles of correct speaking, and accompanies each rule with abundant illustrations and examples.

PRINCIPLES OF RHETORIC . . . $1.20

This popular work has been almost wholly rewritten, and is enlarged by much new material. The treatment is based on the principle that the function of rhetoric is not to provide the student of composition with materials for thought, nor yet to lead him to cultivate style for style's sake, but to stimulate and train his powers of expression—to enable him to say what he has to say in appropriate language.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

(S. 87)

ENGLISH COMPOSITION

BUEHLER'S Practical Exercises in English 50 cents

A DRILL-BOOK for grammar schools and high schools, containing a large number of exercises to be worked out by the student. He is made to choose between the correct and incorrect forms of expression, and to explain why he has done so. By this means he acquires the habit of avoiding mistakes rather than that of correcting them.

BUTLER'S School English - - - 75 cents

A BRIEF, concise, and thoroughly practical manual The book is based on the following plan for teaching English: (1) The study and discussion of selections from standard English authors; (2) constant practice in composition; (3) the study of rhetoric for the purpose of cultivating the pupil's power of criticising and improving his own writing.

MAXWELL and SMITH'S Writing in English - 75 cents

A BOOK for upper grammar classes and high schools, which aims to teach the correct writing of English. It is based on the established principle of teaching from the whole to the parts. Entire compositions are taken up first, followed by paragraphs, then sentence construction, and, finally, words. Models of good composition form a prominent feature, and give interest and value to the work.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

[S. 86]

Text-Books in Grammar for Advanced Grades

BASKERVILL AND SEWELL'S ENGLISH GRAMMAR

90 cents

An advanced grammar for use in High School, Academy, and College classes. It combines in a remarkable degree a clear and concise statement of the facts of the language, based on its reputable use in literature, with rational methods of teaching and applying the same.

LYTE'S ADVANCED GRAMMAR AND COMPOSITION

75 cents

For use in High Schools, Normal Schools, and other Preparatory Schools. Based on the author's popular "Grammar and Composition" and embodying the improvements suggested by successful class room work.

MAXWELL'S ADVANCED LESSONS IN ENGLISH GRAMMAR . . . . . 60 cents

For use in Higher Grammar Grades and High Schools. It embraces all the theory and practice necessary during the last two years of a grammar school course or throughout a high school course. It is intended to serve first, as a *text-book*, and second, as a *book of reference*.

POWELL AND CONNOLLY'S RATIONAL GRAMMAR OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE . . 60 cents

This new grammar differs widely in treatment and terminology from other text-books in English. The subject is developed logically, and every point is made simple and clear. The practical side of the study—the correct use of language in speech and writing—is especially emphasized.

Copies sent, prepaid, on receipt of the price.

American Book Company

NEW YORK • CINCINNATI • CHICAGO

(S. 83)

ESSENTIALS IN ANCIENT HISTORY

Half Leather, 528 Pages. Price, $1.50

By ARTHUR MAYER WOLFSON, Ph.D.
Assistant in History, De Witt Clinton High School, New York City

In Consultation with

ALBERT BUSHNELL HART, LL.D.
Professor of History, Harvard University

THIS convenient manual presents the essentials in ancient history as a unit in a manner both comprehensible and interesting to first-year students in secondary schools. It is prepared on the plan recommended by the Committee of Seven, and at the same time meets every requirement of the Regents of the State of New York. It combines in one volume Greek and Roman history with that of the Eastern nations, and pays more attention to civilization than to mere constitutional development.

The paragraph headings are given in the margins, thus making the text continuous and easy to read. At the end of each chapter are lists of topics for further research, bibliographies of parallel reading, and references to both ancient and modern authorities. A special feature is the giving of a brief list of selected books, not exceeding $25 in cost, and suitable for a school library. The numerous maps show only the places mentioned in the text, thus avoiding confusion from too much detail. The illustrations, although attractive, have been chosen primarily with the purpose of accurately explaining the text.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY, Publishers

(S. 137)

Text-Books in Natural History

By JAMES G. NEEDHAM, M.S.
Instructor in Zoölogy, Knox College, Galesburg, Ill.

NEEDHAM'S ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN ZOÖLOGY

90 cents

A guide in studying animal life in field and laboratory adapted for use in High Schools, Academies, Normal Schools, etc. It has been prepared to meet the widely recognized demand for a text-book in this department of Natural History which should be brief in compass, accurate in statement, and scientific in treatment.

Some of the leading features of the book are: the selection of types for study that are common and easily accessible; the clear and ample directions given for collecting material for study; the means suggested for studying animal life; the microscopic study of the simpler animal types; the adaptation of the book to the use of schools with little material equipment; the natural and easily comprehensible method of classification, and their morphology, physiology, and natural development.

NEEDHAM'S OUTDOOR STUDIES . . . 40 cents

This little book is intended to supply a series of lessons in Nature Study suitable for pupils in the Intermediate or Grammar Grades. Designed for pupils of some years of experience and some previous training in observation, these lessons are given as guides to close and continued observation, and for the educative value of the phenomena of nature which they describe.

Copies sent, prepaid, on receipt of the price.

American Book Company

NEW YORK • CINCINNATI • CHICAGO

(S. 166)

A Modern Chemistry

ELEMENTARY CHEMISTRY

$1.10

LABORATORY MANUAL

50c.

By F. W. CLARKE
Chief Chemist of the United States Geological Survey

and L. M. DENNIS
Professor of Inorganic and Analytical Chemistry in Cornell University

THE study of chemistry, apart from its scientific and detailed applications, is a training in the interpretation of evidence, and herein lies one of its chief merits as an instrument of education. The authors of this Elementary Chemistry have had this idea constantly in mind: theory and practice, thought and application, are logically kept together, and each generalization follows the evidence upon which it rests. The application of the science to human affairs, and its utility in modern life, are given their proper treatment.

The Laboratory Manual contains directions for experiments illustrating all the points taken up, and prepared with reference to the recommendations of the Committee of Ten and the College Entrance Examination Board. Each alternate page is left blank for recording the details of the experiment, and for writing answers to suggestive questions which are introduced in connection with the work.

The books reflect the combined knowledge and experience of their distinguished authors, and are equally suited to the needs both of those students who intend to take a more advanced course in chemical training, and of those who have no thought of pursuing the study further.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY
Publishers

NEW YORK CINCINNATI CHICAGO

(S. 162)

Birds of the United States

A Manual for the Identification of Species East of the Rocky Mountains

By AUSTIN C. APGAR
Author of "Trees of the Northern United States," etc.

Cloth, 12mo, 415 pages. Illustrated $2.00

The object of this book is to encourage the study of Birds by making it a pleasant and easy task. The treatment, while thoroughly scientific and accurate, is interesting and popular in form, and attractive to the reader or student. It covers the following divisions and subjects:

PART I. A general description of Birds and an explanation of the technical terms used by ornithologists.

PART II. Classification and description of each species, with Key.

PART III. The study of Birds in the field, with Key for their identification.

PART IV. Preparation of Bird specimens.

The descriptions of the several species have been prepared with great care and present several advantages over those in other books. They are short and so plainly expressed that they may be recalled readily while looking at the bird. The book is copiously embellished with illustrations drawn especially for this work.

Copies will be sent, prepaid, on receipt of the price.

American Book Company

NEW YORK • CINCINNATI • CHICAGO

(S. 168)

A Descriptive Catalogue of High School and College Text-Books

E issue a complete descriptive catalogue of our text-books for secondary schools and higher institutions, illustrated with authors' portraits. For the convenience of teachers, separate sections are published, devoted to the newest and best books in the following branches of study:

ENGLISH

MATHEMATICS

HISTORY and POLITICAL SCIENCE

SCIENCE

MODERN LANGUAGES

ANCIENT LANGUAGES

PHILOSOPHY and EDUCATION

If you are interested in any of these branches, we shall be very glad to send you on request the catalogue sections which you may wish to see. Address the nearest office of the Company.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

Publishers of School and College Text-Books

NEW YORK CINCINNATI CHICAGO

Boston Atlanta Dallas San Francisco

(S. 312.)

Date Due

FEB 28 '61			
JUL 28 '61			
FE 7 '62			
FE 21 '62			
MR 8 '62			
MR 8 '63			
FE 24 '67			
JY 6 '67			
'67			
NO 10 '75			
MR 9'76			
FEB 05 1997			
	PRINTED	IN U. S. A.	

822.33

A I I R Shl5co
v.10

8199

3 3039 00122004 4